



FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE

U.S. Department of State

Everyday Lao



School of Language Studies

East Asian & Pacific Languages

Lao Section

August 2014

About FSI

Established in 1947, the Foreign Service Institute is the United States Government's primary training institution for employees of the U.S. foreign affairs community, preparing American diplomats and other professionals to advance U.S. foreign affairs interests overseas and in Washington. FSI provides more than 600 courses—to include training in some 70 foreign languages, as well as in leadership, management, professional tradecraft, area studies, and applied information technology skills—to some 100,000 students a year, drawn from the Department of State and more than 40 other government agencies and military service branches. FSI provides support to all U.S. Government employees involved in foreign affairs, from State Department entry-level Foreign and Civil Service employees to newly-assigned Ambassadors, and to our Foreign Service National colleagues who assist U.S. efforts at some 270 posts abroad.

Table of Contents

| | | |
|------------------|---|-----|
| Lesson 1 | <i>Greetings.....</i> | 1 |
| Lesson 2 | <i>Where Are You From?.....</i> | 13 |
| Lesson 3 | <i>Occupation.....</i> | 34 |
| Lesson 4 | <i>Marital Status.....</i> | 51 |
| Lesson 5 | <i>Where Are You?.....</i> | 72 |
| Lesson 6 | <i>You Speak Lao Very Well.....</i> | 89 |
| Lesson 7 | <i>Shopping.....</i> | 109 |
| Lesson 8 | <i>Ordering Food.....</i> | 133 |
| Lesson 9 | <i>Telling Time and Traveling.....</i> | 147 |
| Lesson 10 | <i>Calling Friends.....</i> | 166 |
| Lesson 11 | <i>Directions and Transportation.....</i> | 188 |
| Lesson 12 | <i>Hobbies and Leisure.....</i> | 204 |

🔊 ການທ້າທາຍ (Greetings)

OBJECTIVES

Upon completion of this lesson, you will be able to:

- ✚ greet and address someone properly.
- ✚ ask for someone's name.
- ✚ ask someone to repeat what was said.
- ✚ use expressions, *excuse me* and *thank you* appropriately.
- ✚ use correctly the following pronouns:
 - first person: I, me ຂ້ອຍ, ຂະນ້ອຍ, ຂ້ານ້ອຍ
 - second person: you ເຈົ້າ, ທ່ານ
 - third person: he, she ລາວ, ນາງ, ເຂົາ

COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGE: FRAME 1

| | |
|---|--|
| <p>ມານີດາ: ສະບາຍດີ ຈອນ: ສະບາຍດີ</p> | <p>Manida: Hello! John: Hello!</p> |
|---|--|

COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGE: FRAME 2

| | |
|---|--|
| <p>ສົມພອນ: ຂໍໂທດ, ເຈົ້າຊື່ ຫຍັງ? ຈອນ: ຂ້ອຍຊື່ຈອນ ຈອນສັນ ສົມພອນ: ຂໍໂທດ, ລາວຊື່ຫຍັງ? ຈອນ: ລາວຊື່ ເດວິດ.</p> | <p>Somphone: Excuse me, what is your name? John: My name is John Johnson Somphone: Excuse me, what is his name? John: His name is David.</p> |
|---|--|

EXPANSION 1

| | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| ຫຍັງ? | What? |
| ຊື່ຫຍັງ? | What's the name? |
| ເຈົ້າ ຊື່ຫຍັງ? | What is your name? |
| ຈອນ | Jon |
| ຂ້ອຍຊື່ຈອນ/ຊື່ຂ້ອຍແມ່ນຈອນ | My name is Jon. |
| ນາມສະກຸນ | Last name |
| ນາມສະກຸນທ່ານແມ່ນ ຫຍັງ? | What is your last name? |
| ນາມສະກຸນຂ້ອຍແມ່ນຈອນສັນ | My last name is Johnson. |

EXPANSION 2

| | |
|----------|------------------|
| ຫຍັງ? | What? |
| ຊື່ຫຍັງ? | What's the name? |

| | |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| ເຈົ້າ ຊື່ຫຍັງ? | What is your name? |
| ແມ່ຣີ | Mary |
| ຂ້ອຍຊື່ ແມ່ຣີ | My name is Mary. |
| ນາມສະກຸນ | Last name |
| ນາມສະກຸນທ່ານແມ່ນ ຫຍັງ? | What is your last name? |
| ນາມສະກຸນຂ້ອຍແມ່ນ ໂບແມນ | My last name is Bowman. |

MODEL 1

| | | |
|-----------------|-------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Teacher: | What is your last name? | ນາມສະກຸນທ່ານແມ່ນ ຫຍັງ? |
| Student: | My last name is . . . | ນັກຮຽນ: ນາມສະກຸນຂ້ອຍແມ່ນ . . . |

MODEL 2

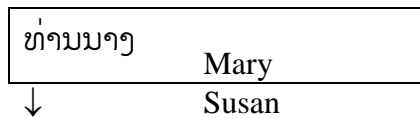
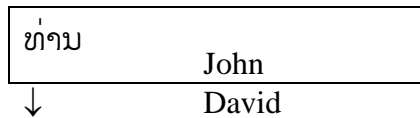
| | | |
|-------------------|--|--|
| Student A: | My name is . . . Excuse me. What is your name? | |
| Student B: | My first name is . . . My last name is . . . Excuse me. What is your last name? | |
| Student C: | My last name is . . . | |
| ນັກຮຽນ ກ: | ຂ້ອຍຊື່ . . . | ຂໍໂທດ, ເຈົ້າ ຊື່ຫຍັງ? |
| ນັກຮຽນ ຂ: | ຂ້ອຍຊື່ . . . | ນາມສະກຸນ. . . ຂໍໂທດ ນາມສະກຸນທ່ານແມ່ນ ຫຍັງ? |
| ນັກຮຽນ ຄ: | ນາມສະກຸນຂ້ອຍແມ່ນ . . . | |

COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGE: FRAME 3

| | |
|--|--|
| <p>ຈອນ: ຂໍໂທດ, ທ່ານ ສົມພອນ, ນາມສະກຸນ ທ່ານ ແມ່ນ ຫຍັງ?</p> <p>ສົມພອນ: ພົນພັກດີ</p> <p>ຈອນ: ກະລຸນາເວົ້າອີກເທື່ອໜຶ່ງໄດ້ ບໍ?</p> <p>ສົມພອນ: ພົນ-ພັກ-ດີ</p> <p>ຈອນ: ຂອບໃຈ</p> | <p>John: Excuse me, Mr. Somphone; what is your last name?</p> <p>Somphone: Phonphakdy.</p> <p>John: Could you kindly say it one more time?</p> <p>Somphone: Phon - phak - dy.</p> <p>John: Thank you.</p> |
|--|--|

MODEL 1

Mr./Mrs./Miss . . .



EXPANSION 1

ໄດ້ບໍ?

Can you . . . ?

ອີກເທື່ອໜຶ່ງ ໄດ້ບໍ?

Can you . . . one more time?

ກະລຸນາເວົ້າອີກເທື່ອໜຶ່ງໄດ້ບໍ?

Can you kindly say it one more time?

MODEL 2

| |
|----------------------|
| Thank you ຂອບໃຈ |
|----------------------|

SUPPLEMENTARY EXPRESSIONS

| | | | |
|--------|----------|---|---------------------------|
| ກະລຸນາ | ອ່ານ | | <i>Please . . . read.</i> |
| ↓ | ຂຽນ | ↓ | write. |
| ↓ | ປິດປຶ້ມ | ↓ | close the book. |
| ↓ | ເປີດປຶ້ມ | ↓ | open the book. |

| | |
|---------------|---|
| ບໍ່ເປັນຫຍັງ | You're welcome/That's all right./With pleasure./ Not at all. |
| ດ້ວຍຄວາມຍິນດີ | With pleasure. |

A: ຂອບໃຈ

Thank you.

B: ບໍ່ເປັນຫຍັງ/ດ້ວຍຄວາມຍິນດີ

You're welcome.

A: ຂໍໂທດ

Pardon me, excuse me

B: ບໍ່ເປັນຫຍັງ

That's all right.

DIALOGUE FOR LISTENING

| | |
|---|---|
| <p>ສົມພອນ: ສະບາຍດີ</p> <p>ຈອນ: ສະບາຍດີ</p> <p>ສົມພອນ: ຂ້ອຍຊື່ ສົມພອນ. ຂໍໂທດ ທ່ານ ຊື່ຫຍັງ?</p> <p>ຈອນ: ຂ້ອຍຊື່ ຈອນ ນາມສະກຸນ ຈອນສັນ ຂໍໂທດ ທ່ານ ສົມພອນ, ນາມສະກຸນ ທ່ານ ແມ່ນຫຍັງ?</p> <p>ສົມພອນ: ນາມສະກຸນຂ້ອຍແມ່ນ ພົມພັກດີ.</p> <p>ຈອນ: ຂໍໂທດ ກະລຸນາເວົ້າອີກເທື່ອໜຶ່ງໄດ້ບໍ່?</p> <p>ສົມພອນ: ພົມ ພັກ ດີ</p> <p>ຈອນ: ຂອບໃຈ</p> | <p>Somphone: Hello.</p> <p>John: Hello.</p> <p>Somphone: My name is Somphone. Excuse me, what is your name?</p> <p>John: My first name is John. My last name is Johnson. Excuse me, Mr. Somphone! What is your last name?</p> <p>Somphone: My last name is Phomphak dy.</p> <p>John: Excuse me. Would you kindly say it one more time?</p> <p>Somphone: Phom - phak - dy.</p> <p>John: Thank you.</p> |
|---|---|

STRUCTURE APPLICATIONS AND CULTURAL NOTES

FRAME 1

1. ສະບາຍດີ is a very common greeting for Lao people. In some respects, it is similar to *hello*, *good morning*, *good afternoon* and *good evening*. But, it may be used for the first greeting at any time of the day and also may be used for saying good-bye.

Sometimes ສະບາຍດີ is accompanied by a *nob* ນົບ. A *nob* is a traditional Lao salute. It is performed by placing the palms of your hands together, raising them towards your face and bowing your head slightly. The rule when to *nob* is similar to that of the military courtesy: juniors salute their superiors, and the superiors return the salute. In the Lao culture, your superiors are defined as any person of older age and/or of a higher social status than you.



FRAME 2

1. ຂໍໂທດ means *excuse me* or *pardon me*, used very much the same way as in English.
2. ເຈົ້າ, ຂ້ອຍ and ລາວ are personal pronouns. Regardless of their function in a sentence, pronouns do not change form like their counterparts in English.
3. ເຈົ້າ is polite for *you*, and used only in the singular.
4. ລາວ is the third person pronoun which can be translated as *he, she*.
5. ຊື່ means *name* or *to be named*, but only refers to the first name which is the name used by the Lao people to address one another.
6. ນາມສະກຸນ means *last name*.
7. ທຍັງ? means *what*, used as a question word. To answer the question containing the word ທຍັງ? simply replace the question word ທຍັງ? with the information for which it asks.

EXAMPLE

- A:** ເຈົ້າຊື່ ທຍັງ? What is your name?
B: ຂ້ອຍຊື່ ຈອນ My name is John.

FRAME 3

1. ທ່ານ is a polite title, given to person you talk to, similar to Mr., Mrs., and Miss in English, but it is used in front of a first name of either gender.

EXAMPLE

| | |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| Mr. Somphone Phonphakdy | ທ່ານ ສົມພອນ ພົນພັກດີ |
| Mrs. Manichanh Souksomboun | ທ່ານນາງ ມະນີຈັນ ສຸກສົມບູນ |
| Miss Manida Vongphachanh | ນາງ ມະນີດາ ວົງພະຈັນ |
| Mr. John Johnson | ທ່ານ ຈອນ ຈອນສັນ |

Besides being used with a name of a person, ທ່ານ may also be used in front of terms of address or reference to show respect.

Note that ທ່ານ is used to show your respect to another person. ທ່ານ is never used in reference to yourself.

2. ກະລຸນາ means *kindly or please* used in request form.
3. ອີກເທື່ອໜຶ່ງ means *one more time; again*.
4. ໄດ້ບໍ່? is used as a question ending. It means *can (you)?*
5. ຂອບໃຈ is a polite *thank you*.

SUMMARY

1. You may greet anyone with the word ສະບາຍດີ at any time of the day.
2. When talking to an equal or superior social class, always use the appropriate polite particle ເຈົ້າ.
3. ເຈົ້າ (you), ຂ້ອຍ (I) and ລາວ (he, she) are personal pronouns, which are always polite, but not for all social classes. To show social class, the “I” must be spoken as ຂ້ານ້ອຍ/ຂະນ້ອຍ.

Note: When you reply to a yes/no question, if you say ເຈົ້າ, it means “yes”.

4. To show your respect, use the polite title ທ່ານ in front of the *first* name of a person who you are talking to or talking about.
5. To answer a ທຍັງ? (what) question, simply replace the word ທຍັງ? with the information for which is asked.

EXAMPLE

A: ເຈົ້າຊື່ ຫຍັງ?

What is your name?

B: ຂ້ອຍຊື່ ຈອນ

My name is John.

EXERCISE

A. In the space provided in front of the English translation on the right, write the number of the Lao expression that matches the English translation.

- | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. ຂໍໂທດ | () Thank you. |
| 2. ສະບາຍດີ | () Excuse me. |
| 3. ເວົ້າອີກເທື່ອໜຶ່ງ ໄດ້ບໍ່? | () Mr. Somphone. |
| 4. ທ່ານ ສົມພອນ | () Can you say it one more time? |
| 5. ຂ້ອຍ ຊື່ຫຍັງ? | () What is my name? |
| 6. ຂອບໃຈ | () Hello. |

B. Write T if the Lao sentence correctly corresponds to the situation. Otherwise write F.

- ___ 1. When a Lao man asks a girl what her name is, he would say: ເຈົ້າຊື່ຫຍັງ?
- ___ 2. A Lao friend who works in Mary Bowman's office, would address her as ທ່ານໂບແມນ
- ___ 3. When a nurse says: ສະບາຍດີ to a doctor, the doctor should return the salutation and say ສະບາຍດີ
- ___ 4. Someone is asking Manichanh Vongphachanh what her name is. She answers ຂ້ອຍຊື່ ມະນີຈັນ ນາມສະກຸນ ວົງພະຈັນ.
- ___ 5. When John Johnson meets a Lao at the American Embassy in Vientiane, he should introduce himself as: ຂ້ອຍຊື່ ຈອນ ນາມສະກຸນ ຈອນສັນ.

C. For each situation given below, write in the space provided an appropriate Lao phrase or sentence.

1. You accidentally bump into Mary, so you say to her in Lao:

2. You want Somphone to repeat a sentence for you, so you say:

3. You want to know the name of a young female receptionist at the company where you conduct business, so you go over to her and say:

4. You want to know the last name of Mr. Somphone, so you ask Mary in Lao:

5. You are trying to get into a crowded elevator and someone is making room for you, so you express your appreciation to him in Lao by saying:

CONVERSATION EXERCISES (ROLE-PLAYS)

1. Using the situation in *Dialogue for Listening* as a guide, a pair of students takes turns playing the role of the two speakers.
2. Doctor Jim Anderson who had arrived recently in Laos was invited to a reception given by a Lao physician whom he has not met. When he arrives, the host greets him. Dr. Anderson responds and gives his name to the host.
3. Peter Nelson meets Miss Vandy Bounkeo, his former assistant in a coffee shop. He greets her and she greets him.

4. Miss Chanthip Phongkham savath tells Mary Bowman her name when they meet for the first time, at a Women's Club meeting. Mary wants to make sure what her name is. Therefore, she asks Chanthip to repeat it for her.
5. Rushing out of the office at lunchtime, John bumps into his messenger boy. Therefore, he says *pardon me* to him.
6. A Lao driver named Bounsang reports to Dr. Jim McCrow. Dr. McCrow wants to know Bounsang's last name.
7. Having lunch with a Lao friend, John Johnson spills his drink on the table, so he apologizes to his friend.
8. Janet's hat was blown away by a strong wind. A young Lao man retrieved it for her, so Janet thanks him.
9. Student A asks student B, "What is your last name?" Student B replies and gives his name.
10. Student B asks student A what their teacher's last name is. Student A gives student B their teacher's last name.

VOCABULARY

| | |
|-------------------|---|
| ສະບາຍດີ | Hello; greeting; goodbye |
| ມານິດາ | <i>Manida</i> , a woman's name |
| ນາຍ/ອ້າຍ/ເອື້ອຍຄູ | Teacher, instructor |
| ນັກຮຽນ/ນັກສຶກສາ | Student |
| ສົມພອນ | <i>Somphone</i> , a Lao name |
| ທ່ານນາງ | You; polite prefix similar to Mrs., and Miss, Ms. |
| ຂໍໂທດ | Excuse me, pardon me |
| ຊື່ | Name; to be named |
| ຫຍັງ? | What? a question word |
| ນາມສະກຸນ | Last name |
| ພົນພັກດີ | <i>Phonphakdy</i> , a Lao last name |
| ກະລຸນາ | Please, kindly |
| ເວົ້າ | To speak |

| | |
|---------------|---|
| ອີກເທື່ອໜຶ່ງ | One more time |
| ໄດ້ບໍ່? | “Can you?” Is used as a question or a request |
| ຂອບໃຈ | Thank you. |
| ລາວ | He, she |
| ອ່ານ | To read |
| ຂຽນ | To write |
| ປິດ/ອັດ | To close |
| ປຶ້ມ | Book |
| ບໍ່ເປັນຫຍັງ | You're welcome; that's all right; never mind |
| ດ້ວຍຄວາມຍິນດີ | With pleasure; You're welcome. |

LESSON QUIZ

Use the exchange in English below as your guide to play role A; your instructor will play role B. Your pronunciation, fluency, proper usage of sentence structure, and cultural application will be evaluated by your instructor.

A: Hello, my name is _____. What is your name?

B: My first name is _____


A: What is your last name?

B: My last name is _____

A: Please repeat it.




B: _____

A: Thank you.

 ເຈົ້າມາຈາກໃສ?
(Where Are You From?)

OBJECTIVES

Upon completion of this lesson, you will be able to:

-  discuss information on where someone is from, specifically:
 - answer and ask questions about someone's place of origin, including country, state, city, and town
 - recognize the name of countries, at least five foreign countries
 - recognize the names of major cities and provinces in Laos
 - use basic personal pronouns
-  respond affirmatively to questions ແມ່ນແລ້ວ
-  respond negatively to questions ບໍ່ ບໍ່ແມ່ນ

COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGE: FRAME 1

| | |
|---|--|
| <p>ຈັນ: ສະບາຍດີ!</p> | <p>Chanh: Hello!</p> |
| <p>ຈອນ: ສະບາຍດີ!</p> | <p>John: Hello!</p> |
| <p>ຈັນ: ຂໍໂທດ! ທ່ານມາຈາກໃສ?</p> | <p>Chanh: Excuse me! Where are you from?</p> |
| <p>ຈອນ: ຂ້ອຍມາຈາກ ສະຫາລັດອະເມລິກາ.</p> | <p>John: I am from the United States of America (USA).</p> |
| <p>ຈັນ: ຂ້ອຍມີ ເພື່ອນຄົນອະເມລິກັນຄົນນຶ່ງ ຢູ່ ລັດ ເທັກຊັສ. ທ່ານມາຈາກລັດນັ້ນບໍ່?</p> | <p>Chanh: I have an American friend living in Texas. Are you from that state?</p> |
| <p>ຈອນ: ບໍ່ ຂ້ອຍມາຈາກ ລັດ ເວີຈິເນຍ.</p> | <p>John: No. I am from Virginia.</p> |
| <p>ຈັນ: ເມືອງໃດ?</p> | <p>Chanh: What city?</p> |
| <p>ຈອນ: ເມືອງ ອາລິງຕັນ. ເຈົ້າເດ ທ່ານມາ ຈາກ ວຽງຈັນບໍ່?</p> | <p>John: City of Arlington. And you, are you from Vientiane?</p> |
| <p>ຈັນ: ບໍ່, ຂ້ອຍມາຈາກ ເມືອງ ປາກເຊ.</p> | <p>Chanh: No, I am from the city of Pakse.</p> |

EXPANSION 1

ເປັນ, ຢູ່, ຄື, ແມ່ນ

Verb to be: am/is/are

ຂໍໂທດ

Excuse me, pardon me

ຈາກ/ມາຈາກ

Be from/come from

ໃສ? ຢູ່ໃສ?

Where?

ໃດ?ໃດ?

Which? What?

ປະເທດ/ເມືອງ

Country

ປະເທດລາວ

Laos, Lao PDR

ຄົນ/ຊາວ

Person, people

ຄົນລາວ

Lao, Laotian

| | |
|--------------------------|------------------------------|
| ຂ້ອຍເປັນຄົນລາວ | I am a Lao, I am a Laotian |
| ສະຫະລັດອະເມລິກາ | The United States of America |
| ຄົນອະເມລິກາ/ຄົນອະເມລິກັນ | American |
| ຂ້ອຍເປັນຄົນອະເມລິກາ/ກັນ | I am an American. |
| ມີ | To have, there is, there are |
| ເພື່ອນ/ໝູ່ | Friend |

ສັບພະນາມ Personal Pronouns

| | |
|--------------------------------|------------|
| ຂ້ອຍ, ເຮົາ | I, me |
| ພວກຂ້ອຍ, ພວກເຮົາ | We, us |
| ເຈົ້າ, ທ່ານ, ພວກເຈົ້າ, ພວກທ່ານ | You |
| ລາວ, ເຂົາ, ນາງ, ທ່ານນາງ | He, she |
| ເຂົາເຈົ້າ, ຂະເຈົ້າ, ພວກເຂົາ | They, them |

Notes: **ພວກ** before nouns and pronouns, it indicates Plural Number.

| | |
|------------|----------------------|
| ພວກ | ຂ້ອຍ, ເຮົາ |
| ↓ | ເຈົ້າ, ທ່ານ |
| ↓ | ເຂົາ, ເຂົາເຈົ້າ, ນາງ |
| ↓ | ເພິ່ນ |
| ↓ | ນັກຮຽນ |
| ↓ | ຄູ/ອາຈານ |

ມີ means to have...

| | | |
|--------------------------------|-----------|----------------------|
| ຂ້ອຍ, ເຮົາ | ມີ | ເພື່ອນ ຢູ່ ອະເມລິກາ. |
| ພວກຂ້ອຍ, ພວກເຮົາ | ↓ | |
| ເຈົ້າ, ທ່ານ, ພວກເຈົ້າ, ພວກທ່ານ | ↓ | |
| ລາວ, ເຂົາ, ນາງ, ເພິ່ນ, ທ່ານນາງ | ↓ | |
| ເຂົາເຈົ້າ, ຂະເຈົ້າ, ພວກເຂົາ | ↓ | |

ຄົນ/ຊາວ + name of the country ... means People of that country.

| | | |
|---------|--------------------|-----------------|
| ຄົນ/ຊາວ | ລາວ | Lao/Laotian |
| ↓ | ອະເມລິກັນ/ອະເມລິກາ | American |
| ↓ | ຂະເໝນ/ຂເມນ | Cambodian/Khmer |
| ↓ | ໄທ | Thai |
| ↓ | ຈີນ | Chinese |
| ↓ | ຫວຽດນາມ | Vietnamese |

RESPONSE DRILL

MODEL 1

ຄູ: ຂໍໂທດ, ທ່ານມາຈາກໃສ?

ນັກຮຽນ ກ: ຂ້ອຍມາຈາກ ຊີກາໂກ.

(Students are to take turns asking each other.)

| | | |
|----------------------|-------|-----|
| ຂໍໂທດ, ທ່ານ, ພວກທ່ານ | ມາຈາກ | ໃສ? |
| ↓ ເຈົ້າ, ພວກເຈົ້າ | ↓ | ↓ |
| ↓ ລາວ, ເພິ່ນ, ນາງ | ↓ | ↓ |
| ↓ ທ່ານ ຈອນ, ທ່ານ ຈິມ | ↓ | ↓ |
| ↓ ເຂົາເຈົ້າ, ຂະເຈົ້າ | ↓ | ↓ |
| ↓ ມະນີດາ, ສົມພອນ | ↓ | ↓ |

| | | |
|-------------------------|-------|------------------|
| ຂ້ອຍ, ພວກຂ້ອຍ | ມາຈາກ | ເມືອງ ຫຼວງພະບາງ. |
| ລາວ, ນາງ, ແມຣີ | ↓ | ເມືອງ ນິວຢອກຄ໌, |
| ທ່ານ ຈອນ, ທ່ານ ເດວິດ | ↓ | ນະຄອນວຽງຈັນ. |
| ພວກເຂົາ, ເຂົາເຈົ້າ | ↓ | ເມືອງ ປາກຊັນ. |
| ທ່ານ ສົມພອນ, ນາງ ມະນີດາ | ↓ | ປະເທດລາວ. |

Below is a list of names of various cities and countries

| | | |
|--------------------------|-------|------------------------|
| Luang Prabang | ເມືອງ | ຫຼວງພະບາງ |
| Samneua | “ | ຊຳເໜືອ |
| Paksan | “ | ປາກຊັນ |
| Savannakhet | “ | ສະຫວັນນະເຂດ |
| Vientiane | “ | ວຽງຈັນ |
| Phonhsavanh | “ | ໂພນສະຫວັນ |
| Pakse | “ | ປາກເຊ |
| Laos | ປະເທດ | ລາວ (ສປປ ລາວ) |
| United States of America | “ | ສະຫະລັດ (ສຫລ) ອະເມລິກາ |
| Thailand | “ | ໄທ |
| Vietnam | “ | ຫວຽດນາມ |
| Cambodia | “ | ຂະເໝນ/ຂເມນ/ກຳປູເຈຍ |
| Burma/Myanmar | “ | ພະມ້າ |
| Russia | “ | ຣັດເຊຍ/ລັດເຊຍ |
| France | “ | ຝຣັ່ງ/ຝະລັ່ງ |
| England | “ | ອັງກິດ |
| Japan | “ | ຍີ່ປຸ່ນ |

MODEL 2

ຄູ: ທ່ານ ມາຈາກ ເມືອງປາກເຊ ບໍ?

ນັກຮຽນ: ບໍ່ ຂ້ອຍບໍ່ໄດ້ມາຈາກເມືອງປາກເຊ. ຂ້ອຍມາຈາກເມືອງຫຼວງພະບາງ.

(Students are to take turns asking each other.)

COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGE: FRAME 2

| | |
|---|---|
| <p>ສົມພອນ: ຂ້ອຍມາຈາກເມືອງປາກເຊ. ທ່ານເດ ທ່ານມາຈາກໃສ?</p> <p>ແນນຊີ: ຂ້ອຍມາຈາກ ເມືອງແອຕແລນຕ້າ.</p> <p>ສົມພອນ: ເມືອງແອຕແລນຕ້າ ຢູ່ໃສ? ແອຕແລນຕ້າ ຢູ່ລັດຄາລິຟໍເນຍ ບໍ່?</p> <p>ແນນຊີ: ບໍ່ແມ່ນ ເມືອງແອຕແລນຕ້າ ຢູ່ລັດຈໍເຈຍ. ເມືອງປາກເຊເດ ຢູ່ໃສ?</p> <p>ສົມພອນ: ເມືອງປາກເຊ ຢູ່ແຂວງຈໍາປາສັກ.</p> <p>ແນນຊີ: ຂອບໃຈ.</p> | <p>Somphone: I am from Pakse. And you, where are you from?</p> <p>Nancy: I am from Atlanta.</p> <p>Somphone: Where is Atlanta? Is it in the state of California?</p> <p>Nancy: No, Atlanta is in Georgia. Where is Pakse?</p> <p>Somphone: Pakse is in Champasak Province.</p> <p>Nancy: Thank you.</p> |
|---|---|

EXPANSION DRILL

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| ເມືອງ | City, town, district |
| ແຂວງ | Province/state |
| ຂ້ອຍມາຈາກເມືອງ... | I come from... |
| ແມ່ນບໍ່? | Is that right? |
| ທ່ານ ມາຈາກເມືອງປາກຊັນ, ແມ່ນບໍ່? | You come from Paksan, is that right? |
| ແມ່ນແລ້ວ ຂ້ອຍມາຈາກເມືອງປາກຊັນ | Yes, I come from Paksan. |
| ບໍ່ ຂ້ອຍມາຈາກແຂວງອຸດົມໄຊ | No, I come from Oudomxay Province. |

RESPONSE DRILL

MODEL 1

ຄູ: ທ່ານ ຈອນ ມາຈາກສະຫະລັດບໍ?

ນັກຮຽນ ກ: ແມ່ນແລ້ວ ທ່ານ ຈອນ/ລາວ ມາຈາກສະຫະລັດ.

ນັກຮຽນ ຂ: ...ໆລໆ

PROGRESSIVE RESPONSE DRILL

MODEL 2

A: You are from the United States, aren't you?

B: Yes, I am from the United States.

Using the English above as a guide, students are to take turns asking and answering in Lao until everyone is fluent.

EXPANSION DRILL

ມາຈາກ

To come from, to be from

ລັດ

State

ລັດໃດ?

What state?

ທ່ານມາຈາກລັດໃດ?

What state do you come from?

ຈໍເຈຍ

Georgia.

ຂ້ອຍມາຈາກລັດ ຈໍເຈຍ

I come from Georgia.

ເມືອງໃດ?

What city?

ເມືອງ ແອຕແລນຕ້າ

Atlanta.

MODEL 3

ຄູ: ທ່ານມາຈາກລັດໃດ?

ນັກຮຽນ ກ: ຂ້ອຍມາຈາກ...

(California)

ນັກຮຽນ ຂ: ລັດ...

(Wisconsin)

MODEL 4

ຄູ: ເມືອງໃດ?
 ນັກຮຽນ ກ: ເມືອງ... (Los Angeles)
 ນັກຮຽນ ຂ: ເມືອງ... (Madison)

Students are to practice questioning and answering each other.

REPETITION DRILL

Pointing at the name of the city on the map of Lao, the instructor is to pronounce each name for the student to repeat.

| <u>LAO</u> | <u>ENGLISH</u> |
|-------------|------------------------|
| ວຽງຈັນ | Vientiane / Viengchanh |
| ຫລວງພະບາງ | Luang Prabang |
| ທ່າແຂກ | Thakhek |
| ສະຫວັນນະເຂດ | Savannakhet |
| ປາກເຊ | Pakse |
| ຈຳປາສັກ | Champasak |

Students are to learn the names of at least four cities.

RESPONSE DRILL: Respond according to the given cue.

MODEL 5

Teacher: What city does Sompchith come from?

Student: Sompchith comes from Vientiane.

ຄູ: ທ່ານ ສົມຈິດ, ເຈົ້າມາຈາກເມືອງໃດ? (Vientiane)
 ນັກຮຽນ ກ: ຂ້ອຍ ມາຈາກ ນະຄອນຫລວງວຽງຈັນ

- ຄູ: ນາງ ມະນີດາ, ເຈົ້າມາຈາກເມືອງໃດ? (Luang Prabang)
 ນັກຮຽນ ຂ: ຂ້ອຍມາຈາກ ເມືອງຫຼວງພະບາງ.
- ຄູ: ຈອນ ເຈົ້າມາຈາກລັດໃດ? (Georgia)
 ນັກຮຽນ ຄ: ຂ້ອຍ ມາຈາກລັດ ຈໍເຈຍ.
- ຄູ: ທອມ ເຈົ້າມາຈາກລັດໃດ? (California)
 ນັກຮຽນ ງ: ຂ້ອຍ ມາຈາກລັດ ຄາລິຟໍເນຍ.
- ຄູ: ລັດດາ ເຈົ້າມາຈາກແຂວງໃດ? (Saravanh)
 ນັກຮຽນ ຈ: ຂ້ອຍ ມາຈາກລັດ ສາຣະວັນ.
- ຄູ: ແອນນາ ເຈົ້າມາຈາກລັດໃດ? (Virginia)
 ນັກຮຽນ ງ: ຂ້ອຍ ມາຈາກລັດ ເວີຈິເນຍ.

Students are to take turns asking each other what state and city they are from.

COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGE: FRAME 3

| | |
|---|--|
| <p>ຈອນ: ລາວເປັນຄົນລາວ ບໍ່ແມ່ນບໍ່? ສົມພອນ: ບໍ່ ລາວບໍ່ (ໄດ້) ເປັນຄົນລາວ. ຈອນ: ລາວມາຈາກ ໃສ? ສົມພອນ: ລາວມາຈາກ ປະເທດໄທ. ຈອນ: ລາວເປັນຄົນໄທບໍ່? ສົມພອນ: ບໍ່ ລາວບໍ່ (ໄດ້) ເປັນຄົນໄທ.</p> | <p>John: He is a Lao, isn't he? Somphone: No, he is not a Lao. John: Where does he come from? Somphone: He comes from Thailand. John: Is he a Thai? Somphone: No, he is not a Thai.</p> |
|---|--|

EXPANSION DRILL

| | |
|---------------------------|------------------------|
| ລາວ, ນາງ, ເພິ່ນ | He /she |
| ທ່ານນາງ | Miss, Ms., Mrs., Mme |
| ເຂົາ/ເຂົາເຈົ້າ/ຂະເຈົ້າ | They, them |
| ເປັນຄົນລາວ | Is a Lao /be a Lao |
| ແມ່ນບໍ? | Is that right? |
| ລາວເປັນຄົນລາວ, ບໍ່ແມ່ນບໍ? | He is a Lao, isn't he? |
| ບໍ່ແມ່ນ | No. |
| ລາວບໍ່ໄດ້ ເປັນຄົນລາວ | He is not a Lao. |
| ບໍ່ ລາວບໍ່ໄດ້ ເປັນຄົນລາວ | No, he is not a Lao. |

RESPONSE DRILL: Respond negatively

- ຄູ: ທ່ານ ເປັນຄົນລາວ ແມ່ນບໍ?
 ນັກຮຽນ: ບໍ່ແມ່ນ ຂ້ອຍບໍ່ໄດ້ ເປັນຄົນລາວ
- ຄູ: ລາວເປັນຄົນອະເມລິກັນ ແມ່ນບໍ?
 ນັກຮຽນ: ບໍ່ແມ່ນ ລາວ ບໍ່ໄດ້ ເປັນຄົນອະເມລິກັນ.
- ຄູ: ນາງ ແມລີ ເປັນຄົນອະເມລິກັນ ແມ່ນບໍ?
 ນັກຮຽນ: ບໍ່ແມ່ນ ນາງ ບໍ່ໄດ້ ເປັນຄົນອະເມລິກັນ.
- ຄູ: ທ່ານ ເດວິດເປັນຄົນອະເມລິກັນ ແມ່ນບໍ?
 ນັກຮຽນ: ບໍ່ແມ່ນ ເພິ່ນ ບໍ່ໄດ້ ເປັນຄົນອະເມລິກັນ.
- ຄູ: ທ່ານນາງ ລີຊາເປັນຄົນສັນຊາດລາວ ແມ່ນບໍ?
 ນັກຮຽນ: ບໍ່ແມ່ນ ທ່ານນາງ ລີຊາ ບໍ່ໄດ້ ເປັນຄົນສັນຊາດລາວ.

EXPANSION DRILL

ມາຈາກ To come from/be from

| | |
|------------------|---------------------------------|
| ໃສ? | Where? |
| ມາຈາກໃສ? | To come from where? |
| ລາວມາຈາກໃສ? | Where does he/she come from? |
| ປະເທດ | Country |
| ປະເທດລາວ | The country of Laos. |
| ລາວມາຈາກປະເທດລາວ | He comes from Laos. |
| ສັນຊາດ | Nationality, national, citizen |
| ສັນຊາດລາວ | Lao, Lao national |
| ສັນຊາດອະເມລິກັນ | American, American national |
| ສັນຊາດຫວຽດນາມ | Vietnamese, Vietnamese national |
| ສັນຊາດໄທ | Thai, Thai national |

PROGRESSIVE RESPONSE DRILL: Students are to take turns asking each other.

MODEL 3

A: Where do you come from?

B: I come from (name of state, city/town).

ກ: ທ່ານມາຈາກໃສ?

ຂ: ຂ້ອຍມາຈາກ...

RESPONSE DRILL: Respond according to given cue.

ຄູ: ທ່ານ ເປັນຄົນອະເມລິກັນ ແມ່ນບໍ່? (Yes)

ນັກຮຽນ: ແມ່ນແລ້ວ ຂ້ອຍເປັນຄົນອະເມລິກັນ

ຄູ: ລາວ ເປັນຄົນໄທ ແມ່ນບໍ່? (No)

ນັກຮຽນ: ບໍ່ແມ່ນ ລາວບໍ່ໄດ້ເປັນຄົນໄທ

ຄູ: ນິພົນ ເປັນຄົນອະເມລິກັນແມ່ນບໍ່? (Yes)

ນັກຮຽນ: ແມ່ນແລ້ວ ນັກຮຽນເປັນຄົນອະເມລິກັນ

ຄູ: ນາຍຄູ ເປັນຄົນລາວ ແມ່ນບໍ່? (No)
 ນັກຮຽນ: ບໍ່ແມ່ນ ເພິ່ນບໍ່ໄດ້ເປັນຄົນລາວ.

ຄູ: ມາລີ ເປັນຄົນອະເມລິກັນ ແມ່ນບໍ່? (No)
 ນັກຮຽນ: ບໍ່ແມ່ນ ລາວບໍ່ໄດ້ເປັນຄົນອະເມລິກັນ.

ຄູ: ລາວ ເປັນຄົນຫວຽດນາມ ແມ່ນບໍ່? (Yes)
 ນັກຮຽນ: ແມ່ນແລ້ວ ລາວເປັນຄົນຫວຽດນາມ

ຄູ: ທ່ານນາງ ຈູດີ ເປັນຄົນລາວ ແມ່ນບໍ່? (No)
 ນັກຮຽນ: ບໍ່ແມ່ນ ເພິ່ນ ບໍ່ໄດ້ເປັນຄົນລາວ

DIALOGUE FOR LISTENING

| | |
|---|--|
| <p>ຈອນ: ຂໍໂທດ. ທ່ານ ເປັນຄົນລາວ ແມ່ນບໍ່? ມາລີ: ແມ່ນແລ້ວ ແລະ ທ່ານເດ, ທ່ານເປັນຄົນສັນຊາດໃດ? ຈອນ: ຂ້ອຍ ເປັນຄົນສັນຊາດອະເມລິກັນ ຂ້ອຍຊື່ຈອນ ນາມສະກຸນ ຈອນສັນ. ທ່ານເດ ທ່ານຊື່ຫຍັງ? ມາລີ: ຂ້ອຍຊື່ ມາລີ ນາມສະກຸນ ພອນປະດິດ ຈອນ: ກະລຸນາ ເວົ້າອີກເທື່ອໜຶ່ງໄດ້ບໍ່? ມາລີ: ມາ-ລີ ພອນ-ປະ-ດິດ ຈອນ: ຂອບໃຈ. ທ່ານ ມາລີ ເປັນໂທວຽງຈັນ ແມ່ນບໍ່? ມາລີ: ບໍ່ແມ່ນ ຂ້ອຍເປັນໂທໜຽວພຣະບາງ. ທ່ານຈອນເດ ທ່ານມາຈາກລັດໃດ? ຈອນ: ຂ້ອຍມາຈາກ ແອຕແລນຕ້າ ລັດ ຈໍເຈຍ.</p> | <p>John: Excuse me. Are you a Lao? Mali: Yes. And you, what nationality are you? John: I am an American. My name is John Johnson. And you? What is your name? Mali: My first name is Mali and my last name is Phonepadith. John: Please say it again. Mali: Ma - li Phone - pa - dith. John: Thank you. Are you from Vientiane? Mali: No. I am from Luang Prabang. What state are you from, John? John: I am from Atlanta, Georgia.</p> |
|---|--|

STRUCTURE APPLICATIONS AND CULTURAL NOTES

FRAME 1

1. ເປັນ is the verb word used to show ability. The ability to perform a certain task uses this verb. This is the “is” and “am” word for English.
2. ຄົນ means *person* or *people*. In Lao, people of various nationalities are referred to by a combination of two words: ຄົນ + name of the country. The names of the countries are listed on page 17; these are the names that may be different from the English version. Names of other countries not on the list are similar to those in English.
3. ສັນຊາດ means *nationality*. To ask for someone's nationality, you say, ທ່ານເປັນຄົນສັນຊາດໃດ? which literally means *You-are-person-nationality-what?* You have two options on how to respond to this question.

EXAMPLES:

| | | |
|-------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| Question: | ທ່ານເປັນຄົນສັນຊາດໃດ? | What is your nationality? |
| Response 1: | ຂ້ອຍເປັນຄົນສັນຊາດອະເມລິກັນ | I am an American. |
| Response 2: | ຂ້ອຍເປັນຄົນສັນຊາດອະເມລິກັນ | I am an American national. |

FRAME 2

1. ແມ່ນບໍ? is added at the end of a statement to mean is that right or is that correct? It could be translated as *Is that right; Is it correct?*; and *Isn't it?* ແມ່ນບໍ? changes the statement into a question.

EXAMPLES

| | | |
|------------|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Statement: | ທ່ານເປັນຄົນສັນຊາດອະເມລິກັນ | You are an American. |
| Question: | ທ່ານເປັນຄົນສັນຊາດອະເມລິກັນ ແມ່ນບໍ? | You are an American, aren't you? |

Notice that except for the addition of the word ແມ່ນບໍ? there is no change in word order of the statement and the question in Lao.

2. ແມ່ນແລ້ວ is *yes, that's right* or an affirmative response to a question ending with ແມ່ນ ບໍ?

EXAMPLE

Question: ທ່ານເປັນຄົນສັນຊາດອະເມຣິກັນ ແມ່ນ ບໍ? You are an American, aren't you?

Response: ແມ່ນແລ້ວ Yes, (I am).

ມາ - means *to come*

ຈາກ - means *from*.

ລັດ - means *state*.

ເມືອງ means *city or town*; Lao use the same word for these two English words. In casual speech, the word ເມືອງ is also used in referring to a country.

EXAMPLES

| | |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|
| ປະເທດ/ເມືອງລາວ | Laos |
| ປະເທດ/ເມືອງສະຫະລັດອະເມລິກາ | United States of America |
| ປະເທດ/ເມືອງອັງກິດ | England |
| ປະເທດ/ເມືອງຂະເໝນ | Cambodia |
| ປະເທດ/ເມືອງຈີນ | China |
| ປະເທດ/ເມືອງເກົາຫຼີ | Korea |
| ປະເທດ/ເມືອງຍີ່ປຸ່ນ | Japan |

FRAME 3

1. ບໍ່ has two functions:

1.1 It is used as a short negative response to a question ending with ບໍ່ແມ່ນ. It means **no**.

1.2 It is used as the negative form of the word ເປັນ *to be*.

EXAMPLE

Question: ທ່ານ ເປັນຄົນລາວ ແມ່ນບໍ່? Are you a Lao?

Negative Response: ບໍ່ ຂ້ອຍບໍ່ໄດ້ເປັນຄົນລາວ No, I am not a Lao.

2. ໃດ? (ທີ່ໃດ?) and ໃສ? means *where*. When asking about nationality, ໃດ? is used. When asking about location, ໃສ is used. The questions ທ່ານເປັນຄົນສັ້ນຊາດໃດ? and ທ່ານມາຈາກໃສ? are equivalent to the English, *Where are you from?* To answer this question, you simply replace the word ໃດ? and ໃສ? with the name of a country, state, city, etc.

3. ປະເທດ means *country*. In informal speech, ປະເທດ is sometimes replaced by the word ເມືອງ.

SUMMARY

1. ເປັນ is the verb *to be*; used only in the sense of *to be someone* such as *I am an American*.
2. Lao verbs do not change form according to subject or tense. Therefore, a verb like ເປັນ may be translated as *am, is, are, was, were, etc.*, depending on the context.
3. In Lao, a native of any country is referred to by the combination of these three words: ຄົນ, ຊາວ, ໄທ + name of country = ຄົນລາວ, ຊາວລາວ, ໄທລາວ which means *a Lao* or *Lao people*. ຄົນ means someone comes from that location; thus ຄົນ, ຊາວ, ໄທ + California will be *a Californian*. However, ໄທ is used more when referring to a citizen of a particular region or province.
4. The name of a country is referred to by either one of these combinations:

ປະເທດ + name of country (formal or written form)

ເມືອງ + name of country (informal or spoken)

EXAMPLE

| | |
|-------------------------|---------|
| ປະເທດລາວ/ເມືອງລາວ | Laos |
| ປະເທດອັງກິດ/ເມືອງອັງກິດ | England |

5. To answer questions ending with ແມ່ນບໍ່? follow the pattern below:

Question: ທ່ານ ເປັນຄົນສັນຊາດອະເມລິກາ ແມ່ນບໍ່?
 Affirmative: ແມ່ນແລ້ວ ຂ້ອຍເປັນຄົນສັນຊາດອະເມລິກາ.
 Negative: ບໍ່ແມ່ນ ຂ້ອຍບໍ່ (ໄດ້) ເປັນຄົນອະເມລິກາ.

6. To answer ໃສ? (*where*), replace ໃສ? with a place's name.

ທ່ານ ມາຈາກໃສ?
 ຂ້ອຍ ມາຈາກ ລັດຄາລິຟໍເນຍ.

EXERCISE

A. In the parenthesis, write the number of the Lao expression that matches the English translation.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. ທ່ານເປັນຄົນອະເມລິກາ ແມ່ນບໍ່? | () What country? |
| 2. ປະເທດໃດ? | () What city? |
| 3. ເມືອງໃດ? | () You are an American right? |
| 4. ລາວເປັນຄົນສັນຊາດໃດ? | () Where is he/she from? |
| 5. ລາວມາຈາກໃສ? | () They are not Lao. |
| 6. ເຂົາເຈົ້າບໍ່ (ໄດ້) ເປັນຄົນລາວ | () What is his nationality? |

B. Select the name of five countries from the list below and write the English equivalent in the space provided.

ປະເທດຂເມນ/ຂະເໝນ _____

| | |
|-------------------|-------|
| ປະເທດອັງກິດ | _____ |
| ປະເທດຈີນ | _____ |
| ປະເທດຝະລັ່ງ/ຝຣັ່ງ | _____ |
| ປະເທດຍີ່ປຸ່ນ | _____ |
| ປະເທດເຢຍລະມັນ | _____ |
| ປະເທດຫວຽດນາມ | _____ |
| ປະເທດເກົາຫລີ | _____ |
| ປະເທດລາວ | _____ |
| ປະເທດຣັດເຊຍ | _____ |

C. Select the name of two Lao cities given in English below and write the Lao version in the space provided.

| <u>ENGLISH</u> | <u>LAO</u> |
|----------------------|------------|
| Vientiane/Viengchanh | _____ |
| Luang Prabang | _____ |
| Savannakhet | _____ |
| Champassak | _____ |

D. Answer the following question affirmatively on the line provided.

ທ່ານເປັນຄົນສັນຊາດອະເມຣິກັນ ແມ່ນບໍ?

E. Answer the following question negatively on the line provided.

ທ່ານເປັນຄົນລາວ ແມ່ນບໍ?

CONVERSATION EXERCISE (ROLE-PLAY)

1. Using the situation in *The Dialogue for Listening* as a guide, each pair of students takes turns playing the role of the two speakers.
2. Student A asks student B where he is from while the rest of the students listen and take notes. Everyone takes turns asking the other where he is from until all the members of the class have been asked.
3. Using the information gathered from the above situation, the instructor asks questions such as: "Is A. from state/city/town x?" substituting the name of person, state, city and town according to the noted information.
4. Each student brings a picture of a well-known world figure from a newspaper or magazine. Then, each student takes turns asking the other the nationality and the name of the person in the picture.
5. While sightseeing at the Temple of Emerald Buddha in Vientiane, John Smith meets an older Lao man who is very nice to him. John greets the Lao man in Lao and introduces himself. The Lao man tells John that his name is Boonma Wannaphol. They carry on a conversation and learn that John is an American from Toledo, Ohio and Boonma is from Vientiane.
6. Mary Bowman is interviewing a young Lao girl who is applying for a job. The girl is a native of Vientiane and her name is Khamdeng Vannavong. Mary asks her where she is from.
7. You are with an international team processing civilian refugees from Cambodia and Laos. Your job is to get some basic bio-data from these refugees. Talking through an interpreter who speaks Thai, Lao, and Cambodian, you're to ask a question such as name of refugees and where they are from. (Use any Laotian and Cambodian names.)
8. John Smith tells Boonma that he is from Toledo, Ohio. Boonma is unfamiliar with the name of the U.S. cities, therefore, he asks John to repeat it.
9. John stops to have a cold drink at a coffee shop. He notices that a girl who waits at his table speaks Lao. John asks if she is Lao. She replies that she is Chinese.

10. Pointing at student A, student B asks student C what student A's name is and where he is from. All members of the class take turns asking and answering the questions.

VOCABULARY

| | |
|-------------------|--|
| 1. ອະເມລິກາ | American, America |
| 2. ຂເມນ/ຂະເໝນ | Cambodian, Cambodia |
| 3. ຈີນ | Chinese, China |
| 4. ອັງກິດ | English, England |
| 5. ຝະລັ່ງ/ຝຣັ່ງ | French, France |
| 6. ເຢຍລະມັນ | German, Germany |
| 7. ຍີ່ປຸ່ນ | Japanese, Japan |
| 8. ເກົາຫລີ | Korean, Korea |
| 9. ລາວ | Lao, Laotian, Laos |
| 10. ມາເລເຊຍ | Malay, Malaysia |
| 11. ມຽນມາ (ພະມ້າ) | Burmese, Burma (Myanmar) |
| 12. ຫວຽດນາມ | Vietnamese, Vietnam |
| 13. ເມືອງ | City, town, country |
| 14. ລັດ, ແຂວງ | State, province |
| 15. ສັນຊາດ | Nationality, national, citizen |
| 16. ຄົນ, ຊາວ, ໄທ | Person, people |
| 17. ທະຫານ | Soldier, military, serviceman |
| 18. ພາສາ | Language |
| 19. ແມ່ນແລ້ວ | Yes, affirmative response for question ending with ແມ່ນບໍ່ |
| 20. ແມ່ນບໍ່? | Question ending, <i>isn't it?</i> |
| 21. ບໍ່ແມ່ນ | No, negative form of ແມ່ນ <i>to be</i> |
| 22. ໃດ? ໃສ? | Where (noun, adverb, question word) |
| 23. ຈາກ | From, be from, come from |
| 24. ເປັນ, ແມ່ນ | To be, as I <i>am</i> an American |
| 25. ມາຮອດ | To arrive |
| 26. ໄປ | To go |

LESSON QUIZ

A. Select from the given Lao words to fill in the blanks.

| | | | | | |
|-----|-----|----|-------|------|---------|
| ຈາກ | ຊາດ | ມາ | ມາຈາກ | ເປັນ | ບໍ່ແມ່ນ |
|-----|-----|----|-------|------|---------|

1. ຂ້ອຍ _____ ຄົນສັນຊາດອະເມລິກັນ
2. ລາວ _____ ລັດໃດ?
3. ທ່ານ _____ ຄົນສັນຊາດໃດ?
4. ທ່ານ _____ ຈາກໃສ?
5. ຂ້ອຍ _____ ເມືອງລາວ

B. Select the name of five countries from the list below and write the English equivalent.

1. ປະເທດຂເມນ/ຂະເໝນ _____
2. ປະເທດສະຫະລັດ _____
3. ປະເທດຈີນ _____
4. ປະເທດລາວ _____
5. ປະເທດຍີ່ປຸ່ນ _____
6. ປະເທດໄທ _____
7. ປະເທດຫວຽດນາມ _____
8. ປະເທດເກົາຫລີ _____

C. Write the name of four cities in Laos.

D. Translate the following sentences.

1. Where are you from? _____
2. What is your nationality? _____
3. Is he a Lao? _____
4. Yes, he is a Lao. _____
5. No, he is not an American. _____





<http://www.i-travel.bg/052/images/EXC/laos.jpg>

 ອາຊີບ-ວິຊາຊີບ
(Occupation)

OBJECTIVES

Upon completion of this lesson, you will be able to:

-  discuss information about what type of work someone does, specifically:
 - exchange greetings with someone.
 - initiate and respond to questions about what type of work someone does.
 - initiate and respond to questions about where someone works.
 - recognize at least seven occupations.

-  use correctly the following grammatical features:
 - the possessive ຂອງ
 - the negative particle ບໍ່ໄດ້

COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGE: FRAME 1

| | |
|---|---|
| <p>ສົມພອນ: ທ່ານສະບາຍດີບໍ?</p> <p>ຈອນ: ສະບາຍດີ. ຂອບໃຈ. ແລະ ທ່ານເດ?</p> <p>ສົມພອນ: ສະບາຍດີ. ຂອບໃຈ.</p> | <p>Somphone: How are you?</p> <p>John: I am fine. Thank you. And you?</p> <p>Somphone: I am fine. Thank you.</p> |
|---|---|

DRILL

| | |
|----------------------|------------------------|
| ສະບາຍດີ | Hi!, Hello! to be fine |
| ຂ້ອຍສະບາຍດີ | I am fine. |
| ລາວສະບາຍດີ | He/She is fine. |
| ທ່ານ(ເຈົ້າ)ສະບາຍດີ | You are fine. |
| ທ່ານ ຈອນ ສະບາຍດີ | John is fine. |
| ທ່ານນາງ ແມຣີ ສະບາຍດີ | Mary is fine. |
| ທ່ານ ສົມພອນ ສະບາຍດີ | Somphone is fine. |

TRANSFORMATION DRILL: Change each statement into a question by adding the interrogative particle ບໍ at the end of the statement.

| STATEMENT | QUESTION | TRANSLATION |
|----------------------|-------------------------|------------------|
| ສະບາຍດີ | ທ່ານສະບາຍດີບໍ? | How are you? |
| ລາວສະບາຍດີ | ລາວສະບາຍດີບໍ? | How is he/she? |
| ທ່ານ ຈອນ ສະບາຍດີ | ທ່ານ ຈອນ ສະບາຍດີບໍ? | How is John? |
| ທ່ານນາງ ແມຣີ ສະບາຍດີ | ທ່ານ ນາງແມຣີ ສະບາຍດີບໍ? | How is Mary? |
| ທ່ານ ສົມພອນ ສະບາຍດີ | ທ່ານ ສົມພອນ ສະບາຍດີບໍ? | How is Somphone? |

SUBSTITUTION DRILL

MODEL

ທ່ານ

ທ່ານເດ?

And you?

ລາວ

ລາວເດ?

And him/her?

ທ່ານຈິມ

ແລະທ່ານ ຈິມເດ?

And Jim?

ທ່ານນາງ ມາລີ

ທ່ານນາງ ມາລີເດ?

And Mali?

RESPONSE DRILL: The instructor is to exchange greetings with each student.

MODEL

T: ທ່ານສະບາຍດີບໍ?

S: ສະບາຍດີ ຂອບໃຈ ທ່ານເດ?

T: ສະບາຍດີ ຂອບໃຈ.

RECOGNITION DRILL: Using the model, students are to pair up and take turns greeting each other.

COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGE: FRAME 2

ສິນໄຊ: ທ່ານເຮັດວຽກຫຍັງ?

ຈອນ: ຂ້ອຍເປັນທ່ານໝໍ

ສິນໄຊ: ເມຍຂອງທ່ານເດ?

ຈອນ: ເມຍຂ້ອຍເປັນນາງພະຍາບານ

Sinxai: What kind of work do you do?**John:** I am a doctor.**Sinxai:** And your wife?**John:** My wife is a nurse.

DRILLS

| | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| ເຮັດວຽກ / ເຮັດການ | to work |
| ຫຍັງ? | What? |
| ທ່ານ | You (formal prefix) |
| ທ່ານເຮັດວຽກຫຍັງ? | What kind of work do you do? |
| ລາວເຮັດວຽກຫຍັງ? | What kind of work does he/she do? |
| ເມຍ / ພັນລະຍາ | wife |
| ເມຍທ່ານເຮັດວຽກຫຍັງ? | What kind of work does your wife do? |
| ທ່ານ ສິນໄຊ ເຮັດວຽກຫຍັງ? | What kind of work does Sinxai do? |

SUBSTITUTION DRILL

MODEL

| | | |
|-------------------------|----------------------|--------------------------------|
| ທ່ານໝໍ (ນາຍແພດ) | ລາວເປັນທ່ານໝໍ | He is a doctor/medical doctor. |
| ນາຍຄູ | ລາວເປັນນາຍຄູ | He is a teacher. |
| ນາຍຊ່າງ | ລາວເປັນນາຍຊ່າງ | He is a mechanic. |
| ພໍ່ຄ້າ (m) / ແມ່ຄ້າ (f) | ລາວເປັນພໍ່ຄ້າ/ແມ່ຄ້າ | He / She is a merchant. |
| ນາງພະຍາບານ | ລາວເປັນນາງພະຍາບານ | She is a nurse. |
| ແມ່ເຮືອນ | ລາວເປັນແມ່ເຮືອນ | She is a housewife. |
| ເລຂານຸການ | ລາວເປັນເລຂານຸການ | She is a secretary. |
| ຂ້າລັດຖະການ | ລາວເປັນຂ້າລັດຖະການ | He is a government employee. |

RESPONSE DRILL: Respond according to given cue.

MODEL

| | |
|---|----------------|
| ລາວເຮັດວຽກຫຍັງ? ລາວເປັນນາຍຊ່າງ | (ນາຍຊ່າງ) |
| ທ່ານເຮັດວຽກຫຍັງ? ຂ້ອຍເປັນນາຍຄູ | (ນາຍຄູ) |
| ພໍ່ເຈົ້າເຮັດວຽກຫຍັງ? ພໍ່ຂ້ອຍເປັນຂ້າລັດຖະການ | (ຂ້າລັດຖະການ) |
| ລາວເຮັດວຽກຫຍັງ? ລາວເປັນທ່ານໝໍ | (ທ່ານໝໍ) |
| ຜົວເຈົ້າເຮັດວຽກຫຍັງ? ຜົວຂ້ອຍເປັນນັກວິຊະວະກອນ | (ນັກວິຊະວະກອນ) |
| ເມຍເຈົ້າເຮັດວຽກຫຍັງ? ເມຍຂ້ອຍເປັນນາງພະຍາບານ | (ນາງພະຍາບານ) |
| ເມຍເຈົ້າເຮັດວຽກຫຍັງ? ເມຍຂ້ອຍເປັນແມ່ເຮືອນ | (ແມ່ເຮືອນ) |
| ທ່ານສົມພອນເຮັດວຽກຫຍັງ? ທ່ານສົມພອນເປັນພໍ່ຄ້າ | (ພໍ່ຄ້າ) |
| ນາງມະນີດາເຮັດວຽກຫຍັງ? ນາງມະນີດາເປັນນັກຮຽນ | (ນັກຮຽນ) |

COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGE: FRAME 3

| | |
|---|--|
| <p>ສິນໄຊ: ເພື່ອນຂອງທ່ານ ເປັນນາຍຊ່າງ ຄືກັນບໍ?</p> <p>ຈອນ: ບໍ່ ລາວບໍ່(ໄດ້)ເປັນນາຍຊ່າງ ລາວເປັນພົນລະເຮືອນ.</p> <p>ສິນໄຊ: ລາວເຮັດວຽກຢູ່ໃສ?</p> <p>ຈອນ: ລາວເຮັດວຽກຢູ່ສະຖານທູດອະເມລິກັນ.</p> | <p>Sinxai: Is your friend a mechanic also?</p> <p>John: No, he is not a mechanic. He is a civilian.</p> <p>Sinxai: Where does he work?</p> <p>John: He works at the U. S. Embassy.</p> |
|---|--|

DRILLS

ທ່ານ ເປັນນາຍຊ່າງ ແມ່ນບໍ?

ບໍ່ແມ່ນ ຂ້ອຍບໍ່ໄດ້ເປັນນາຍຊ່າງ

Are you a mechanic?

No, I am not a mechanic.

ລາວ ເປັນນາງພະຍາບານ ແມ່ນບໍ?

ບໍ່ແມ່ນ ລາວບໍ່ໄດ້ເປັນນາງພະຍາບານ

Is she a nurse?

No, she is not a nurse.

ທ່ານ ເປັນນາຍຄູ ແມ່ນບໍ?

ບໍ່ແມ່ນ ຂ້ອຍບໍ່ໄດ້ເປັນນາຍຄູ

Are you a teacher?

No, I am not a teacher.

ລາວ ເປັນທ່ານໝໍ(ນາຍແພດ) ແມ່ນບໍ?

ບໍ່ແມ່ນ ລາວບໍ່ໄດ້ເປັນທ່ານໝໍ(ນາຍແພດ)

Is he a doctor?

No, he is not a doctor.

RESPONSE DRILL: Respond negatively.

MODEL

Question: ເພື່ອນເຈົ້າ ເປັນນາຍຊ່າງ ແມ່ນບໍ່?

Answer: ບໍ່ແມ່ນ ລາວບໍ່ໄດ້ເປັນນາຍຊ່າງ.

Q: ເມຍຂອງທ່ານ ເປັນນາງພະຍາບານ ແມ່ນບໍ່?

A: ບໍ່ແມ່ນ ລາວບໍ່ໄດ້ເປັນນາງພະຍາບານ.

Q: ທ່ານ ເປັນທ່ານໝໍ(ນາຍແພດ) ແມ່ນບໍ່?

A: ບໍ່ແມ່ນ ຂ້ອຍບໍ່ໄດ້ເປັນທ່ານໝໍ.

Q: ເພື່ອນຂອງທ່ານ ເປັນນັກວິຊະວະກອນ ແມ່ນບໍ່?

A: ບໍ່ແມ່ນ ລາວບໍ່ໄດ້ເປັນນັກວິຊະວະກອນ

Q: ເມຍຂອງນາຍຄູ ເປັນເລຂານຸການ ແມ່ນບໍ່?

A: ບໍ່ແມ່ນ ລາວບໍ່ໄດ້ເປັນເລຂານຸການ

REPETITION DRILL

ລາວເປັນພົນລະເຮືອນ ບໍ່/ແມ່ນບໍ່?

ແມ່ນແລ້ວ ລາວເປັນພົນລະເຮືອນ

Is he a civilian?

Yes, he is a civilian.

ເພື່ອນຂອງທ່ານເປັນພົນລະເຮືອນຄືກັນບໍ່?

ແມ່ນແລ້ວ ລາວເປັນພົນລະເຮືອນຄືກັນ

Is your friend a civilian also?

Yes, he is a civilian also.

ລາວເປັນນາຍຄູແມ່ນບໍ່?

ແມ່ນແລ້ວ ລາວເປັນນາຍຄູ

Is he a teacher?

Yes, he is a teacher.

RESPONSE DRILL: Respond affirmatively.

MODEL

ຖາມ: ທ່ານເປັນນາຍຊ່າງ ແມ່ນບໍ?

ຕອບ: ແມ່ນແລ້ວ ຂ້ອຍເປັນນາຍຊ່າງ

ຖາມ: ເຈົ້າເປັນນາຍຄູ ແມ່ນບໍ?

ຕອບ: ແມ່ນແລ້ວ ຂ້ອຍເປັນນາຍຄູ

ຖາມ: ເພື່ອນຂອງທ່ານເປັນພົນລະເຮືອນ ແມ່ນບໍ?

ຕອບ: ແມ່ນແລ້ວ ເພື່ອນຂອງຂ້ອຍເປັນພົນລະເຮືອນ

ຖາມ: ເຈົ້າເປັນທ່ານໝໍ ແມ່ນບໍ?

ຕອບ: ແມ່ນແລ້ວ ຂ້ອຍເປັນທ່ານໝໍ

ຖາມ: ເຈົ້າເປັນຂ້າລັດຖະການ ແມ່ນບໍ?

ຕອບ: ແມ່ນແລ້ວ ຂ້ອຍເປັນຂ້າລັດຖະການ

ຖາມ: ເຈົ້າເປັນແມ່ເຮືອນ ແມ່ນບໍ?

ຕອບ: ແມ່ນແລ້ວ ຂ້ອຍເປັນແມ່ເຮືອນ

EXPANSION DRILL

ເຮັດວຽກ / ເຮັດການ

To work

ໃສ? ຢູ່ໃສ

Where?

ທ່ານເຮັດວຽກຢູ່ໃສ?

Where are you working at?

ສະຖານທູດອະເມລິກາ

The U.S. Embassy

ຢູ່ສະຖານທູດອະເມລິກາ

At the U.S. Embassy

ຂ້ອຍເຮັດການຢູ່ສະຖານທູດອະເມລິກາ

I work at the U.S. Embassy.

SUBSTITUTION DRILL

| | | |
|-----------|------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Question: | ລາວເຮັດວຽກຢູ່ໃສ? | (Where does he work?) |
| Answer: | ລາວເຮັດວຽກຢູ່ | ສະຖານທູດອະເມລິກັນ (U.S. Embassy) |
| | ↓ | ທະນາຄານ (Bank) |
| | ↓ | ໂຮງໝໍ (Hospital) |
| | ↓ | ວຽງຈັນ (Vientiane) |
| | ↓ | ໂຮງຮຽນ (School) |
| | ↓ | ແອດແລນຕ້າ (Atlanta) |
| | ↓ | ຍີ່ປຸ່ນ (Japan) |

SUPPLEMENTARY EXPRESSIONS

1. Indicate other workplace with ຢູ່

| | |
|-------------------|---|
| ຂ້ອຍເຮັດວຽກຢູ່... | I work at . . . |
| ↓ | ກະຊວງປ້ອງກັນປະເທດ ອົງການຊ່ອຍເຫລືອສະຫະລັດ ຢູແອຊ໌ເອດ / ຢູເສດ USAID |
| ↓ | ໂຮງຮຽນນາໆຊາດ International School |

2. Declaring status

| | | | | |
|------|-------|-----|----------------|---------|
| ຂ້ອຍ | ບໍ່ມີ | ... | I don't have a | ... |
| ↓ | ↓ | ເມຍ | ↓ | wife |
| ↓ | ↓ | ລູກ | ↓ | child |
| ↓ | ↓ | ຜົວ | ↓ | husband |

3. Doing something

| Q. ລາວ | ເຮັດ | ຫຍັງ? | What is he/she doing? |
|--------|--------|----------|-------------------------|
| A. ↓ | ເວົ້າ | ພາສາລາວ | He/She is speaking Lao. |
| ↓ | ຮຽນ | ↓ | ↓ studying ↓ |
| ↓ | ອ່ານ | ↓ | ↓ reading ↓ |
| ↓ | ຂຽນ | ↓ | ↓ writing ↓ |
| ↓ | ປາກ | ↓ | ↓ speaking ↓ |
| ↓ | ຄິດ | ↓ | ↓ sleeping ↓ |
| ↓ | ສອນ | ↓ | ↓ teaching ↓ |
| ↓ | ຄົວກິນ | ອາຫານລາວ | ↓ cooking ↓ |

DIALOGUE FOR LISTENING

| | |
|--|--|
| <p>ຈັນສຸກ: ສະບາຍດີບໍ?</p> <p>ຈອນ: ສະບາຍດີ ຂອບໃຈ ທ່ານເດ?</p> <p>ຈັນສຸກ: ສະບາຍດີ ຂອບໃຈ ຂໍໂທດ ທ່ານ ຈອນ ທ່ານເຮັດວຽກຢູ່ສະຖານທູດອະເມລິກັນ ແມ່ນບໍ?</p> <p>ຈອນ: ບໍ່ ຂ້ອຍບໍ່(ໄດ້)ເຮັດວຽກຢູ່ສະຖານທູດ ອະເມລິກັນ ແຕ່ວ່າຂ້ອຍເຮັດວຽກ ຢູ່ທະນາຄານ</p> <p>ຈັນສຸກ: ທ່ານເປັນນາຍຄັງ ແມ່ນບໍ?</p> <p>ຈອນ: ແມ່ນແລ້ວ ຂ້ອຍເປັນນາຍຄັງ</p> <p>ຈັນສຸກ: ແລະ ເມຍຂອງທ່ານເດ ລາວເຮັດວຽກ ຫຍັງ?</p> <p>ຈອນ: ເມຍຂ້ອຍເປັນນາງພະຍາບານ</p> <p>ຈັນສຸກ: ເມຍຂອງທ່ານເຮັດວຽກຢູ່ໃສ?</p> <p>ຈອນ: ຢູ່(ທີ່)ໂຮງໝໍ (ໂຮງພະຍາບານ)</p> | <p>Chansouk: How are you?</p> <p>John: I am fine. Thank you. And you?</p> <p>Chansouk: I am fine. Thank you. Excuse me, John, do you work at the U.S. Embassy?</p> <p>John: No, I do not work at the U.S. Embassy. But, I work at the bank.</p> <p>Chansouk: Are you a banker?</p> <p>John: Yes, I am a banker.</p> <p>Chansouk: And, what about your wife? What does she do?</p> <p>John: My wife is a nurse.</p> <p>Chansouk: Where does she work?</p> <p>John: At the hospital.</p> |
|--|--|

STRUCTURE APPLICATIONS AND CULTURAL NOTES

FRAME 1

1. ສະບາຍດີ means *to be fine; to be in good health*. When it is used with the question word ບໍ່ it becomes a general greeting.
2. ບໍ່? is a question word that is used to ask for verification. It may occur after a word or a sentence. It is similar in usage to ແມ່ນບໍ່? (Lesson 1).

EXAMPLE

| | |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Question: ລາວເປັນນັກຮຽນ ແມ່ນບໍ່? | He is a student, isn't he? |
| Answer: ແມ່ນແລ້ວ ລາວເປັນນັກຮຽນ | Yes, he is a student. |
| Answer: ບໍ່ແມ່ນ ລາວບໍ່ໄດ້ເປັນນັກຮຽນ | No, he is not a student. |

ເດ? Is an interrogative particle used at the end of a question. It can be translated as *How about?* or *What about?*

EXAMPLE

| | |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Question: ທ່ານເປັນຄົນລາວ ແມ່ນບໍ່? | Are you Lao? You're a Lao right? |
| Answer: ແມ່ນແລ້ວ ທ່ານເດ? | Yes, and you? (What about you?) |

FRAME 2

1. ທ່ານເຮັດວຽກຫຍັງ? means *What kind of work do you do?* (literally, *You work what?*) The question can be answered by giving your occupation.

EXAMPLE

| | |
|------------------|------------------------------|
| ທ່ານເຮັດວຽກຫຍັງ? | What kind of work do you do? |
| ຂ້ອຍເປັນທ່ານໝໍ | I am a doctor. |

2. ຂອງ makes it possessive. It means *of* or *belong to*. It is used to indicate possession. It occurs after whatever is possessed and before the possessor, i.e. ເມຍຂອງລາວ *his wife*.

The occurrence of ຂອງ is optional when a person, place or thing that is possessed is present in the noun phrase.

EXAMPLE

| | |
|-----------|-----------------|
| ເມຍຂອງລາວ | The wife of his |
| ເມຍລາວ | His wife |

ຂອງ becomes mandatory; however, when whatever noun being possessed is not present.

EXAMPLE

| | |
|---------------------------|------------|
| ຂອງລາວ | His / hers |
| ຂອງເຈົ້າ | Yours |
| ຂອງເຂົາ; ຂອງຂະເຈົ້າ | Theirs |
| ຂອງເຂົາເຈົ້າ; ຂອງພວກເພິ່ນ | Theirs |

In this case, the noun is not present but it must be able to be understood before ຂອງ can be omitted.

FRAME 3

1. ບໍ່ໄດ້ *not, not as assumed* is used to negate the verb ເປັນ *to be*, in situations that are contrary to expectation. Besides being used with the verb ເປັນ, ບໍ່ໄດ້ can also be used to negate other verbs, particularly action verbs. It is also used frequently in past situations.
2. ຢູ່ໃສ? means *where*. ລາວຢູ່ໃສ? Where is he/she?
3. ຢູ່ (location) means *at*. ລາວ ຢູ່ ເຮືອນ (ບ້ານ) He/She is at home.

SUMMARY

1. The greeting ສະບາຍດີ uses to all people of social status.

2. To say *no* to a question ending with ແມ່ນບໍ່?, use ບໍ່ແມ່ນ for *no*, use ແມ່ນແລ້ວ for *yes*, LAO PDR uses ເຈົ້າ for *yes*.

3. Answer the question ທ່ານເຮັດວຽກຫຍັງ? By saying what your occupation is.

EXAMPLE

| | |
|------------------|------------------------------|
| ທ່ານເຮັດວຽກຫຍັງ? | What kind of work do you do? |
| ຂ້ອຍເປັນທ່ານໝໍ | I am a doctor. |

4. The possessive ຂອງ sometimes can be omitted, particularly when the head noun is present.

EXAMPLE

| | |
|------------|----------------------|
| ເມຍຂອງຂ້ອຍ | (ເມຍ is a head noun) |
| ເມຍຂ້ອຍ | (ຂອງ is omitted) |

5. Use ບໍ່ໄດ້ to negate the verb ເປັນ *to be*, in situations that are contrary to expectation.

6. Both ໃສ? and ຢູ່ໃສ? means *where*. But ໃສ? is used mostly with a question containing the verb of motion ໄປ *to go* and, ມາ *to come*. ຢູ່ໃສ is used in a question containing other verbs.

EXERCISE

A. Write the number of the Lao sentence in the space provided in front of the English translation that match the Lao sentence.

- | | |
|----------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. ຂ້ອຍສະບາຍດີ | () How are you? |
| 2. ສະບາຍດີບໍ່? | () I am fine. |
| 3. ເມຍທ່ານເດ? | () No!He/She is not a nurse. |
| 4. ທ່ານເຮັກວຽກຢູ່ໃສ? | () He/She works at the U.S. Embassy. |
| 5. ທ່ານເຮັດວຽກຫຍັງ? | () Where do you work? |

6. ຂ້ອຍເປັນທ່ານໝໍ () How about your wife?
7. ລາວເຮັດວຽກຢູ່ສະຖານທູດອະເມລິກາ () What kind of work do you do?
8. ເພື່ອນຂ້ອຍເປັນພົນລະເຮືອນ () I am a doctor.
9. ນາຍຄູເປັນພົນລະເຮືອນຄືກັນແມ່ນບໍ່? () My friend is a civilian.
- 10 ບໍ່ແມ່ນ ລາວບໍ່ໄດ້ເປັນນາງພະຍາບານ () Are the teachers civilians too?

B. Write the English translation in the space provided next to each occupation listed below in Lao. You must be able to give at least seven answers.

- | | | | |
|-----------|-------|-----------------|-------|
| 1. ທະຫານ | _____ | 6. ນາງພະຍາບານ | _____ |
| 2. ນາຍຄູ | _____ | 7. ນັກວິຊະວະກອນ | _____ |
| 3. ນັກຮຽນ | _____ | 8. ແມ່ເຮືອນ | _____ |
| 4. ທ່ານໝໍ | _____ | 9. ເລຂານຸການ | _____ |
| 5. ພໍ່ຄ້າ | _____ | 10. ຂ້າລັດຖະການ | _____ |

CONVERSATION EXERCISES (ROLE-PLAYS)

1. Based on the *Dialogue for Listening*, discuss the following information:

- Where does John work?
- Where does John's wife work?
- What kind of work does she do?
- Is John a civilian or military?

2. Students are to take turns asking about each other's occupation.

3. John Johnson, who is from Atlanta, Georgia, is meeting Mali Phonephadith at a friend's party. They carry on a conversation. John Johnson finds out that Mali is from

Luang Prabang and that she is teaching at a local school in Vientiane. Conduct a conversation in Lao.

4. Have students discuss various people in the classroom in terms of:

- Their names
- Whether they are teachers, wives, or friends, and if so, of whom
- Whether they are military or civilian
- Whether they are able to speak any foreign language
- Where they are from

5. Give each student a small card on which the name of an occupation is written in English. Members of the class will take turns asking the cardholder, whether he/she is (using one of the occupations learned so far). The cardholder will respond according to the occupations written on his/her card. He/she will give a negative response if the question is not correct. The cardholder will be questioned again and again until the occupation asked for is matched with the one written on the card.

VOCABULARY

| | |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. ...ເດ? | What about? How about? |
| 2. ເລຂານຸການ | Secretary |
| 3. ຂ້າລັດຖະການ | Government employee/state employee |
| 4. ຂອງ | Of, belong to |
| 5. ນາຍ/ອ້າຍ/ເອື້ອຍຄູ | Teacher |
| 6. ບໍ່ໄດ້ | Part of negative answer |
| 7. ແມ່ເຮືອນ | Housewife |
| 8. ທ່ານໝໍ | Doctor |
| 9. ຄືກັນ | Also |
| 10. ນັກຮຽນ/ນັກສຶກສາ | Student |
| 11. ເມຍ/ພັນລະຍາ | Wife |
| 12. ພໍ່ຄ້າ/ນັກທຸລະກິດ | Merchant, businessman |
| 13. ພົນລະເຮືອນ | Civilian |
| 14. ສະບາຍດີ | To be fine, to be in good health |
| 15. ສະຖານທູດ | Embassy |

16. ຢູ່ At; ຢູ່ໃສ?: where (adverb, noun)
 17. ບໍ່ Interrogative particle
 18. ໂຮງໝໍ (ພະຍາບານ) Hospital
 19. ໂຮງຮຽນ School; ໂຮງຮຽນນາໆຊາດ: international school
 20. ນັກວິຊະວະກອນ Engineer
 21. ເຮັດວຽກ To work
 22. ນາຍຄັງ Banker

LESSON QUIZ

A. Select an appropriate question word from the list to fill in the blank.

| | | | | | | |
|------|-----|-------|--------|----------|---------|-----|
| ບໍ່? | ໃສ? | ຫຍັງ? | ຢູ່ໃສ? | ແມ່ນບໍ່? | ໄດ້ບໍ່? | ໃດ? |
|------|-----|-------|--------|----------|---------|-----|

ຈອນ: ທ່ານເຮັດວຽກ _____?

ສິນໄຊ: ຂ້ອຍເປັນນັກວິຊະວະກອນ

ຈອນ: ເມຍຂອງທ່ານເປັນນັກວິຊະວະກອນຄືກັນ _____?

ສິນໄຊ: ບໍ່ແມ່ນ ລາວເປັນນາຍຄູ

ຈອນ: ລາວເປັນຄົນລາວ _____?

ສິນໄຊ: ບໍ່ແມ່ນ ລາວເປັນຄົນອັງກິດ

ຈອນ: ລາວສອນໜັງສື ຢູ່ໂຮງຮຽນ _____?

ສິນໄຊ: ລາວສອນໜັງສື ຢູ່ໂຮງຮຽນນາໆຊາດ

ຈອນ: ໂຮງຮຽນນາໆຊາດຢູ່ _____?

ສິນໄຊ: ຢູ່ຖະໜົນລ້ານຊ້າງ

ຈອນ: ເມຍທ່ານເວົ້າພາສາລາວ _____?

ສິນໄຊ: ໄດ້ ເມຍຂ້ອຍເວົ້າພາສາລາວໄດ້ _____


B. Select an English response to each question in Lao.


| | | |
|-------|----------------------------|----------------------|
| _____ | ກ. ສະບາຍດີບໍ? | 1. She is a nurse. |
| _____ | ຂ. ຂໍໂທດ ທ່ານເຮັດວຽກຢູ່ໃສ? | 2. I'm Cathy. |
| _____ | ຄ. ເມຍທ່ານເຮັດວຽກຫຍັງ? | 3. I'm fine, thanks. |
| _____ | ງ. ໂຮງການເຈົ້າຢູ່ໃສ? | 4. I work at home. |
| _____ | ຈ. ເຈົ້າຊື່ຫຍັງ? | 5. On Lanxang Road. |

 ຖານະການແຕ່ງງານ
(Marital Status)

OBJECTIVES

Upon completion of this lesson, you will be able to:

-  discuss information concerning someone's marital status, specifically:
 - whether he/she is married or single
 - where his/her family is
 - whether someone has children, siblings, and how many

-  use the following grammatical features correctly:
 - the interrogative particles **ແລ້ວບໍ?** and **ບໍ?**
 - unit classifier
 - count from 1-10 in Lao

COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGE: FRAME 1

| | |
|--|---|
| <p>ສົມພອນ: ທ່ານເປັນຊາຍໂສດ ຫຼື ແຕ່ງງານແລ້ວ?</p> <p>ຈອນ: ຂ້ອຍແຕ່ງງານແລ້ວ</p> <p>ສົມພອນ: ເມຍ(ຂອງ)ທ່ານຢູ່ໃສ?</p> <p>ຈອນ: ເມຍ(ຂອງ)ຂ້ອຍຢູ່ອະເມລິກາ</p> | <p>Somphone: Are you single or married?</p> <p>John: I am married.</p> <p>Somphone: Where is your wife?</p> <p>John: She is in the United States.</p> |
|--|---|

EXPANSION DRILL

| | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| ເປັນຍິງໂສດ (f)/ເປັນຊາຍໂສດ (m) | To be single (gender required) |
| ແຕ່ງງານ | To marry |
| ແລ້ວ | Already |
| ແຕ່ງງານແລ້ວ | To be married (already) |
| ທ່ານເປັນ...ໂສດ | You are single. (gender required) |
| ທ່ານເປັນຊາຍໂສດ ຫຼື ແຕ່ງງານແລ້ວ? | Are you single or married? (male) |
| ຂ້ອຍແຕ່ງງານແລ້ວ | I am married already. |
| ຢູ່ | To be located /at |
| ເມຍຂອງທ່ານຢູ່ໃສ? | Where is your wife? |
| ເມຍຂອງຂ້ອຍຢູ່ອະເມລິກາ | My wife (she) is in America. |

RESPONSE DRILL

MODEL

Question: Is he single or married? (Cue: Single)
Response: He is single.

ຄໍາຖາມ: ເຈົ້າເປັນຊາຍໂສດ ຫຼື ແຕ່ງງານແລ້ວ? (ເປັນຊາຍໂສດ)
ຄໍາຕອບ: ຂ້ອຍແຕ່ງງານແລ້ວ

ຄໍາຖາມ: ລາວເປັນຊາຍໂສດ ຫຼື ແຕ່ງງານແລ້ວ? (ແຕ່ງງານແລ້ວ)

ຄໍາຕອບ: ລາວແຕ່ງງານແລ້ວ

ຄໍາຖາມ: ນາງ ແມ່ນີ້ ເປັນຍິງໂສດ ຫຼື ແຕ່ງງານແລ້ວ? (ເປັນຍິງໂສດ)

ຄໍາຕອບ: ນາງ ແມ່ນີ້ ເປັນຍິງໂສດ

ຄໍາຖາມ: ທ່ານ ຈິມ ເປັນຊາຍໂສດ ຫຼື ແຕ່ງງານແລ້ວ? (ແຕ່ງງານແລ້ວ)

ຄໍາຕອບ: ທ່ານ ຈິມ ແຕ່ງງານແລ້ວ

RESPONSE DRILL

MODEL:

Question: Where is your wife? (Cue: In the U.S.)

Response: She is in the United States.

ເມຍທ່ານຢູ່ໃສ? (ສະຫະລັດອະເມລິກາ)

ລາວຢູ່ ສະຫະລັດອະເມລິກາ

ຜົວລາວຢູ່ໃສ? (ລັດຈໍເຈຍ)

ຜົວລາວ ຢູ່ລັດຈໍເຈຍ

ເພື່ອນເຈົ້າຢູ່ໃສ? (ລັດນິວຢອກ)

ລາວຢູ່ ລັດນິວຢອກ

ທ່ານ ສົມພອນ ຢູ່ໃສ? (ເມືອງວຽງຈັນ)

ລາວຢູ່ ເມືອງວຽງຈັນ

ນາງ ແມ່ນີ້ ຢູ່ໃສ? (ເມືອງວໍຊິງຕັນ)

ນາງ ແມ່ນີ້ ຢູ່ເມືອງວໍຊິງຕັນ

ນາງ ມາລີ ຢູ່ໃສ? (ເມືອງຫຼວງພະບາງ)

ລາວ(ນາງ)ຢູ່ ເມືອງຫຼວງພະບາງ

ນັກຮຽນໄປຮຽນຢູ່ໃສ? (ໂຮງຮຽນ)
 ນັກຮຽນໄປຮຽນຢູ່ ໂຮງຮຽນ

ໂຮງຮຽນຢູ່ໃສ? (ລັດຄາລິຟໍເນຍ)
 ໂຮງຮຽນຢູ່ ລັດຄາລິຟໍເນຍ

ເມືອງອີດຈະມັນຢູ່ໃສ? (ລັດເວີຈິນເນຍ)
 ເມືອງອີດຈະມັນຢູ່ ລັດເວີຈິນເນຍ

ເມືອງໄມອາມິຢູ່ໃສ? (ລັດຟໍຣິດາ)
 ເມືອງໄມອາມິຢູ່ ລັດຟໍຣິດາ

COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGE: FRAME 2

| | |
|--|---|
| <p>ສິນທະລາດ: ເຈົ້າມີຄອບຄົວແລ້ວບໍ່?</p> <p>ຈອນ: ມີແລ້ວ</p> <p>ສິນທະລາດ: ນາງ ແມຣີ ເດ?</p> <p>ຈອນ: ຍັງ ລາວຍັງເປັນໂສດຢູ່</p> | <p>Sintharath: Do you have a family? (Are you married)</p> <p>John: Yes, I have.</p> <p>Sintharath: What about Mary?</p> <p>John: No, she's still single.</p> |
|--|---|

EXPANSION DRILL

| | |
|-----------------------|--|
| ມີ | To have, there is, there are |
| ຄອບຄົວ | Family |
| ເຈົ້າມີຄອບຄົວ | You have a family. |
| ແລ້ວບໍ່? | Already? |
| ເຈົ້າມີຄອບຄົວແລ້ວບໍ່? | Do you have a family yet? (Are you married?) |
| ມີແລ້ວ | Yes, I have. |
| ນາງ ແມຣີ | Mary |
| ນາງ ແມຣີ ເດ? | What about Mary? |
| ບໍ່ ຍັງບໍ່ມີ | No, not yet. |

ລາວ/ນາງ ຍັງເປັນໂສດຢູ່

She is still single.

RESPONSE DRILL: Respond affirmatively.

MODEL

Teacher: Do you have a family yet?

Student A: Yes, I do.

ຄ: ທ່ານມີຄອບຄົວແລ້ວ ຫຼື ຍັງ?

ນ: ມີ ຂ້ອຍມີຄອບຄົວແລ້ວ

ຄ: ທ່ານແຕ່ງງານແລ້ວ ຫຼື ຍັງ?

ນ: ແຕ່ງແລ້ວ ຂ້ອຍແຕ່ງງານແລ້ວ

ຄ: ລາວໄປເຮັດວຽກ ແລ້ວ ຫຼື ຍັງ?

ນ: ໄປແລ້ວລາວໄປເຮັດວຽກແລ້ວ

ຄ: ເຈົ້າເວົ້າແລ້ວ ຫຼື ຍັງ?

ນ: ເວົ້າແລ້ວ ຂ້ອຍເວົ້າແລ້ວ

ຄ: ເຈົ້າອ່ານໜັງສືແລ້ວ ຫຼື ຍັງ?

ນ: ອ່ານແລ້ວ ຂ້ອຍອ່ານໜັງສືແລ້ວ

RESPONSE DRILL: Respond negatively.

MODEL

T: Are you married?

A: No, not yet.

T: ທ່ານແຕ່ງງານແລ້ວ ຫຼື ຍັງ?

B: ຍັງ

T: ທ່ານ ຈອນ ໄປເຮັດວຽກແລ້ວ ຫຼື ຍັງ?

C: ຍັງ

T: ທ່ານເວົ້າແລ້ວ ຫຼື ຍັງ?

D: ຍັງ

T: ນາງ ແມ່ນີ້ ໄປໂຮງຮຽນແລ້ວ ຫຼື ຍັງ?

E: ຍັງ

T: ລາວໄປເຮັດວຽກແລ້ວ ຫຼື ຍັງ?

F: ຍັງ

RECOGNITION DRILL: Respond according to given cue.

MODEL

T: Do you have a family yet? (No)

A: No, not yet.

T: ທ່ານແຕ່ງງານແລ້ວ ຫຼື ຍັງ? (No)

B: _____

T: ລາວໄປເຮັດວຽກແລ້ວ ຫຼື ຍັງ? (Yes)

C: _____

T: ທ່ານອ່ານໜັງສືແລ້ວ ຫຼື ຍັງ? (No)

D: _____

T: ທ່ານເຮັດວຽກແລ້ວ ຫຼື ຍັງ? (Yes)

E: _____

T: ລາວເວົ້າແລ້ວ ຫຼື ຍັງ? (No)

F: _____

COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGE: FRAME 3

| | |
|--|--|
| <p>ມາລີ: ທ່ານມີລູກແລ້ວບໍ່?</p> <p>ຈອນ: ມີແລ້ວ</p> <p>ມາລີ: ທ່ານມີລູກຈັກຄົນ?</p> <p>ຈອນ: ຂ້ອຍມີລູກຄົນໜຶ່ງ / ຄົນດຽວ</p> <p>ມາລີ: ທ່ານມີລູກຊາຍ ຫຼື ລູກສາວ?</p> <p>ຈອນ: ຂ້ອຍມີລູກຊາຍ</p> | <p>Mali: Do you have any children?</p> <p>John: Yes, I do.</p> <p>Mali: How many children do you have?</p> <p>John: I have one child.</p> <p>Mali: A son or a daughter?</p> <p>John: I have a son.</p> |
|--|--|

EXPANSION DRILL

| | |
|------------------|------------------------------|
| ມີ | To have, there is, there are |
| ລູກ | Child, children, offspring |
| ທ່ານມີລູກ | You have children. |
| ບໍ່ | Interrogative particle |
| ທ່ານມີລູກບໍ່? | Do you have any children? |
| ມີ | Yes, (I) have. |
| ຈັກ | How many? (Quantifier) |
| ຄົນ | Classifier for people |
| ຈັກຄົນ? | How many people? |
| ໜຶ່ງ | One |
| ລູກຄົນໜຶ່ງ | One child |
| ຂ້ອຍມີລູກຄົນໜຶ່ງ | I have one child. |

RESPONSE DRILL: Respond affirmatively.

MODEL

T: Does he have children?

A: Yes, he does.

T: ລາວມີລູກບໍ?

A: ມີ ລາວມີລູກ

T: ທ່ານມີລູກບໍ?

B: ມີ ຂ້ອຍມີລູກ

T: ທ່ານ ຈອນ ມີລູກບໍ?

C: ມີ ທ່ານ ຈອນ ມີລູກ

T: ນາງ ແມ່ຮີ ມີລູກບໍ?

D: ມີ ນາງ ແມ່ຮີ ມີລູກ

T: ທ່ານ ສິນທະລາດ ມີລູກບໍ?

E: ມີ ທ່ານ ສິນທະລາດ ມີລູກ

RESPONSE DRILL: Respond negatively.

MODEL

T: Does he have any children?

A: No, he doesn't have any.

T: ລາວມີລູກບໍ?

A: ບໍ່ ລາວບໍ່ມີລູກ

T: ທ່ານມີລູກບໍ?

B: ບໍ່ ຂ້ອຍບໍ່ມີລູກ

T: ເພື່ອນທ່ານມີລູກບໍ?

C: ບໍ່ ເພື່ອນຂ້ອຍບໍ່ມີລູກ

T: ທ່ານ ສິນໄຊ ມີລູກບໍ?

D: ບໍ່ ທ່ານ ສິນໄຊ ບໍ່ມີລູກ

T: ນາງ ມາລີ ມີລູກບໍ?

E: ບໍ່ ນາງ ມາລີ ບໍ່ມີລູກ

T: ທ່ານ ທອມ ມີລູກບໍ?

F: ບໍ່ ທ່ານ ທອມ ບໍ່ມີລູກ

REPETITION DRILL

| | | |
|----|-----------|-------|
| ໑ | ໜຶ່ງ/ນຶ່ງ | One |
| ໒ | ສອງ | Two |
| ໓ | ສາມ | Three |
| ໔ | ສີ່ | Four |
| ໕ | ຫ້າ | Five |
| ໖ | ຫົກ | Six |
| ໗ | ເຈັດ | Seven |
| ໘ | ແປດ | Eight |
| ໙ | ເກົ້າ | Nine |
| ໑໐ | ສິບ | Ten |

FAMILIARIZATION DRILL

Each student is to count in Lao from *one* to *ten*.

SUBSTITUTION DRILL

MODEL

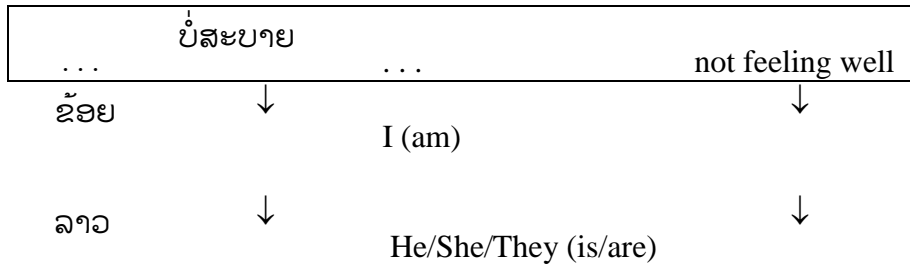
- T: How many children do you have? (one)
 A: I have *one* child.
- T: ທ່ານມີລູກຈັກຄົນ? ໜຶ່ງ (1)
 A: ຂ້ອຍມີລູກຄົນໜຶ່ງ
- T: ທ່ານມີລູກຈັກຄົນ? ສອງ (2)
 B: ຂ້ອຍມີລູກສອງຄົນ
- T: ທ່ານມີລູກຈັກຄົນ? ສາມ (3)
 C: ຂ້ອຍມີລູກສາມຄົນ
- T: ທ່ານມີລູກຈັກຄົນ? ສີ່ (4)
 D: ຂ້ອຍມີລູກສີ່ຄົນ
- T: ທ່ານມີລູກຈັກຄົນ? ຫ້າ (5)
 E: ຂ້ອຍມີລູກຫ້າຄົນ

SUPPLEMENTARY EXPRESSIONS

1. A formal familiar request: *Please open the...*

| | | | |
|------------|----------|-----------------|--------|
| ກະລຸນາເປີດ | ... | Please open the | ... |
| ↓ | ປຶ້ມ | ↓ | book |
| ↓ | ປ່ອງຢ້ຽມ | ↓ | window |
| ↓ | ປະຕູ | ↓ | door |

2. Saying that *somebody is not feeling well*



3. Numbers: 11 -

| | | | |
|----------------------|-----------|------------|----|
| ສິບ | 10 | ສິບເອັດ | 11 |
| ຊາວ | 20 | ຊາວເອັດ | 21 |
| ສາມສິບ | 30 | ສາມສິບເອັດ | 31 |
| ສິ່ສິບ | 40 | ເກົ້າສິບ | 90 |
| (ໜຶ່ງ) ລ້ອຍ / ຮ້ອຍ | 100 | | |
| (ໜຶ່ງ) ພັນ | 1,000 | | |
| (ໜຶ່ງ) ໜື່ນ / ສິບພັນ | 10,000 | | |
| (ໜຶ່ງ) ແສນ/ຮ້ອຍພັນ | 100,000 | | |
| (ໜຶ່ງ) ລ້ານ | 1,000,000 | | |

DIALOG FOR LISTENING

| | |
|--|---|
| <p>ມາລີ: ທ່ານເປັນຊາຍໂສດ ຫຼື ແຕ່ງງານແລ້ວ?</p> <p>ຈອນ: ຂ້ອຍແຕ່ງງານແລ້ວ</p> <p>ມາລີ: ຄອບຄົວທ່ານຢູ່ໃສ?</p> <p>ຈອນ: ຄອບຄົວຂ້ອຍຢູ່ອະເມລິກາ</p> <p>ມາລີ: ທ່ານມີລູກບໍ?</p> <p>ຈອນ: ມີ ຂ້ອຍມີລູກ</p> <p>ມາລີ: ທ່ານມີລູກຈັກຄົນ?</p> <p>ຈອນ: ຂ້ອຍມີລູກສາມຄົນ</p> <p>ມາລີ: ລູກຊາຍຈັກຄົນ ແລະ ລູກສາວຈັກຄົນ?</p> <p>ຈອນ: ລູກຊາຍສອງຄົນ ແລະ ລູກສາວໜຶ່ງຄົນ</p> | <p>Mali: Are you single or married?</p> <p>John: I am married already.</p> <p>Mali: Where is your family?</p> <p>John: My family is in the USA.</p> <p>Mali: Do you have any children?</p> <p>John: Yes, I do.</p> <p>Mali: How many?</p> <p>John: Three.</p> <p>Mali: How many boys and girls?</p> <p>John: Two boys and one girl.</p> |
|--|---|

STRUCTURE APPLICATIONS AND CULTURAL NOTES

FRAME 1

1. ເປັນຊາຍໂສດ / ເປັນຍິງໂສດ means *to be single*. (gender required)
2. ແຕ່ງງານ means to marry. When ແຕ່ງງານ is used in conjunction with the word ແລ້ວ (already), it means *to be married*.

EXAMPLE

ລາວ / ນາງ ແຕ່ງງານແລ້ວ She is married.

3. ຢູ່... *to be*, is used only in reference to location.

EXAMPLE

ຂ້ອຍຢູ່ໂຮງຮຽນ I am at school.

ຂ້ອຍຢູ່ເຮືອນ I am at home.

FRAME 2

1. ເຈົ້າມີຄອບຄົວແລ້ວບໍ່ literally means *You have family or not yet?* It is equivalent to the English question, *Are you married?* It is used mostly when you ask a person a direct question about his/her marital status.

2. ແລ້ວບໍ່ *already or not yet?* is used as a question ending to find out whether or not the action of the sentence has been completed.

EXAMPLE

ຜົວຂອງທ່ານໄປເຮັດວຽກແລ້ວ ຫຼື ຍັງ? Has your husband gone to work yet/already?

ໄປແລ້ວ

Yes, he has.

ຍັງ ຍັງບໍ່ໄປ

No, not yet.

To summarize the rules for giving an answer to a question ending with ແລ້ວບໍ່ follow the example below:

Affirmative answer: main verb ໄປ + ແລ້ວ

Negative answer: ຍັງ

FRAME 3

1. ບໍ່ is used as a question ending particle when a simple YES or NO is expected.

To respond affirmatively, the main verb of the sentence is repeated. For a negative response, ບໍ່ is used in front of the main verb.

EXAMPLE

| | | |
|--------------|---------------|---------------------------|
| Question: | ເຈົ້າມີລູກບໍ? | Do you have any children? |
| Affirmative: | ມີ | Yes, I have. |
| Negative: | ບໍ່ມີ | No, I don't. |

ບໍ່ never occurs at the end of a negative answer, but in front of the verb.

2. The Lao numbers from 1 to 10 are:

| | | |
|----|-------------|-------|
| ໑ | ໜຶ່ງ / ນຶ່ງ | one |
| ໒ | ສອງ | two |
| ໓ | ສາມ | three |
| ໔ | ສີ່ | four |
| ໕ | ຫ້າ | five |
| ໖ | ຫົກ | six |
| ໗ | ເຈັດ | seven |
| ໘ | ແປດ | eight |
| ໙ | ເກົ້າ | nine |
| ໑໐ | ສິບ | ten |

Multiples of ten (except 20) are made by putting the multiplier in front of ten:

| | | | |
|----|----|---------|----------|
| 30 | is | ສາມສິບ | (3 x 10) |
| 70 | is | ເຈັດສິບ | (7 x 10) |
| 80 | is | ແປດສິບ | (8 x 10) |

Numbers added to 10 or multiples of 10 are as the following:

| | | | |
|----|----|-----------|--------------|
| 33 | is | ສາມສິບສາມ | (3 x 10 + 3) |
| 52 | is | ຫ້າສິບສອງ | (5 x 10 + 2) |
| 65 | is | ຫົກສິບຫ້າ | (6 x 10 + 5) |

The number 20 is ຊາວ; 22 is ຊາວສອງ; 23 is ຊາວສາມ; 29 is ຊາວເກົ້າ. Except for number 1 itself, ເອັດ is used for one in 11, 21, 31, 91, etc.

11 is ສິບເອັດ

21 is ຊາວເອັດ

51 is ຫ້າສິບເອັດ

101 is ຮ້ອຍເອັດ

For higher numbers:

| | | | | | | |
|-----------|----|----------|----|------|----|----------|
| 100 | is | ໜຶ່ງຮ້ອຍ | or | ລ້ອຍ | or | ຮ້ອຍໜຶ່ງ |
| 1,000 | is | ໜຶ່ງພັນ | or | ພັນ | or | ພັນໜຶ່ງ |
| 10,000 | is | ໜຶ່ງຫມ້ນ | or | ຫມ້ນ | or | ຫມ້ນໜຶ່ງ |
| 100,000 | is | ໜຶ່ງແສນ | or | ແສນ | or | ແສນໜຶ່ງ |
| 1,000,000 | is | ໜຶ່ງລ້ານ | or | ລ້ານ | or | ລ້ານໜຶ່ງ |

3. In Lao, when a concrete noun is being counted or specified by words such as ນີ້ *this*, ນັ້ນ *that*, ພູ້ນ *over there*, and ໃດ *which*, it must be accompanied by a unit classifier or just simply called a classifier. The following type of construction is used to indicate the number of items when referring to concrete nouns.

| NOUN | + | NUMBER | + | CLASSIFIER |
|--------|---|--------|---|---------------------------|
| ລູກ | | 1 | | ຄົນ (one child) |
| ນັກຮຽນ | | 2 | | ຄົນ (two students) |
| ທະຫານ | | 3 | | ຄົນ (three soldiers) |
| ປຶ້ມ | | 4 | | ຫົວ / ເຫຼັ້ມ (four books) |
| ເຮືອນ | | 5 | | ຫຼັງ / ຫລັງ (five houses) |
| ລົດ | | 6 | | ຄັນ (six cars) |

When ນີ້ *this*, ນັ້ນ *that*, ພູ້ນ *over there*, and ໃດ *which* are used to specify a noun, the following construction is used:

| NOUN | + | CLASSIFIER | + | SPECIFIER |
|--------|---|------------|---|--------------------|
| ນາຍຄູ | | ຄົນ | | ນີ້ (this teacher) |
| ນັກຮຽນ | | ຄົນ | | ໃດ (which student) |

Since the unit classifier must be used in any situation in which you wish to specify a particular item out of a group (of concrete nouns), you will have to learn which unit classifier is used with any particular noun.

4. ຫຼື means *or*; it is used here as a conjunction.

SUMMARY

1. Both ເປັນ and ຢູ່ are translated as *to be*. Whereas ເປັນ means *to be someone or something*, ຢູ່ means *to be located at*.

2. To respond to a question ending with ແລ້ວບໍ່, follow the structure below:

Question: ລາວໄປແລ້ວບໍ່?

Affirmative: *Main verb* ໄປ + ແລ້ວ
ໄປແລ້ວ

Negative : ຍັງ

3. To respond to a question ending with ບໍ່?

Question: ທ່ານມີລູກບໍ່?

Affirmative: *Main verb*
ມີ

Negative: ບໍ່ + ມີ *Main verb*
ບໍ່ມີ

4. When a classifier is used in conjunction with a number, follow this structure, except when indicating 1 number, then the classifier number is in front of the classifier:

| | | | | |
|--------|---|--------|---|-------------|
| NOUN | + | NUMBER | + | CLASSIFIER |
| ຜູ້ຍິງ | | 3 ຄົນ | | Three women |

| | | | | |
|--------|---|------------|---|------------------|
| NOUN | + | CLASSIFIER | + | NUMBER |
| ຜູ້ຍິງ | | ຄົນ | | ໜຶ່ງ (one woman) |

5. When a classifier is used with a determiner, follow this structure:

| | | | | |
|-------|---|------------|---|--------------------|
| NOUN | + | CLASSIFIER | + | SPECIFIER |
| ນາຍຄູ | | ຄົນ | | ນີ້ (this teacher) |

EXERCISE

A. Write the number of the Lao sentence in the space provided in front of the English translation that matches the Lao sentence.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. ລາວເປັນຊາຍ / ລາວເປັນຍິງ)ໂສດ | () I am married. |
| 2. ຂ້ອຍແຕ່ງງານແລ້ວ | () He/ She is single. |
| 3. ເມຍທ່ານຢູ່ໃສ? | () I don't have any children. |
| 4. ຄອບຄົວຂອງລາວຢູ່ອະເມລິກາ | () Do you have a son or daughter? |
| 5. ລາວຍັງບໍ່ມີຄອບຄົວ | () How many children do you have? |
| 6. ທ່ານມີລູກຈັກຄົນ? | () They have three children. |
| 7. ຂ້ອຍບໍ່ມີລູກ | () Where is your wife? |
| 8. ທ່ານມີລູກບໍ່? | () He is not married. |
| 9. ທ່ານມີລູກສາວ ຫຼື ລູກຊາຍ? | () Do you have any children? |
| 10. ເຂົາເຈົ້າມີລູກ 3 ຄົນ | () His/Her family is in America |

B. Put the following Lao numerals in the right order.

໑໐ ຫົ ຊ ໑ ໔ ໖ ໕ ໒ ໗ ໙

1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____
 6. _____ 7. _____ 8. _____ 9. _____ 10. _____

C. Answer the question affirmatively. Write your answer in the space provided.

ທ່ານມີເມຍບໍ່?

D. Answer the question negatively. Write your answer in the space provided.

ທ່ານແຕ່ງງານແລ້ວບໍ່?

E. Answer the question negatively. Write your answer in the space provided.

ທ່ານມີລູກບໍ?

F. Answer the question negatively. Write your answer in the space provided.

ລາວມີຄອບຄົວແລ້ວບໍ?

G. Write the question for the following answer in the space provided.

ລາວມີລູກສອງຄົນ

CONVERSATION EXERCISES (ROLE-PLAYS)

1. Based on the *Dialog for Listening*, discuss the following information:

- Is the female speaker or the male speaker already married?
- Who is in the U.S.A.?
- Does one of the speakers have any children?
- How many boys and/or girls?

2. Count aloud from 1 to 10 in Lao.

3. The instructor will ask each student about their marital status including the number and sex of their children should they have any.

4. Single students ask married students questions such as:

- Where did they get married?
- Do they have any children?

- How many?
- How many boys and girls?
- What are their names?
- Are they in school yet?
- Where is his/her spouse?
- What does he/she do?

VOCABULARY

| | | |
|-----|-------------|---|
| 1. | ຍັງ | Not yet |
| 2. | ຢູ່ | To be located at |
| 3. | ຍັງ...ຢູ່ | Still |
| 4. | ຈັກ? | How many? |
| 5. | ຄົນ | Classifier for people; people, person |
| 6. | ຄອບຄົວ | Family |
| 7. | ແລ້ວ | Already |
| 8. | ແລ້ວບໍ່? | Question ending <i>already or not yet</i> |
| 9. | ລູກ | Child, children, offspring |
| 10. | ລູກຊາຍ | Son |
| 11. | ລູກສາວ | Daughter |
| 12. | ມີ | To have, there is, there are |
| 13. | ເປັນ...ໂສດ | To be single (gender required) |
| 14. | ແຕ່ງງານ | To marry |
| 15. | ແຕ່ງງານແລ້ວ | To be married |
| 16. | ໑ ຫນຶ່ງ | One |
| 17. | ໒ ສອງ | Two |
| 18. | ໓ ສາມ | Three |
| 19. | ໔ ສີ່ | Four |
| 20. | ໕ ຫ້າ | Five |
| 21. | ໖ ຫົກ | Six |
| 22. | ໗ ເຈັດ | Seven |

| | | |
|-----|---------------------|----------------------------|
| 23. | ຂຽ ແປດ | Eight |
| 24. | ລ ເກົ້າ | Nine |
| 25. | ໑໐ ສິບ | Ten |
| 26. | ຢ່າຮ້າງກັນ/ປະກັນ | To divorce; to be divorced |
| 27. | ອ້າຍເອື້ອຍ | Older siblings |
| 28. | ນ້ອງ/ນ້ອງໆ(ສາວ/ຊາຍ) | Younger sibling |
| 29. | ອ້າຍເອື້ອຍນ້ອງ | Siblings |
| 30. | ອ້າຍ | Older brother |
| 31. | ເອື້ອຍ | Older sister |
| 32. | ນ້ອງຊາຍ | Younger brother |
| 33. | ນ້ອງສາວ | Younger sister |

LESSON QUIZ


A. Select an appropriate question word from the list to fill in the blank.

ໃສ? ແລ້ວ...ບໍ່? ບໍ່...ແມ່ນບໍ່? ຢູ່ໃສ? ຈັກຄົນ? ໃດ?

- ຈອນ: ທ່ານມີຄອບຄົວ _____?
ຈັນສະໝອນ: ມີແລ້ວ
- ຈອນ: ຜົວເຈົ້າ _____?
ຈັນສະໝອນ: ລາວຢູ່ລັດ ວໍຊິງຕັນ
- ຈອນ: ທ່ານມີລູກ _____?
ຈັນສະໝອນ: ມີ ຂ້ອຍມີລູກສາວຄົນດຽວ/ຄົນໜຶ່ງ


B. Provide the Lao equivalent for the following:

| | |
|--|-----------|
| John: Are you married? | ຈອນ: |
| Chansamone: Yes, I am. | ຈັນສະໝອນ: |
| John: Do you have any children? | ຈອນ: |
| Chansamone: Yes, I do. Two girls. | ຈັນສະໝອນ: |
| John: What are their names? | ຈອນ: |
| Chansamone: Mali and Champa | ຈັນສະໝອນ: |

 ເຈົ້າຢູ່ໃສ?
(Where Are You?)

OBJECTIVES

Upon completion of this lesson, you will be able to:

 discuss information concerning where someone is staying, specifically:

- address of someone's residence and place of work
- the hotel where someone is staying
- someone's house number

 use the following grammatical features correctly:

- the future tense ຊິ; ຈະ
- the continuous tense ກຳລັງ...ຢູ່
- the question word ເທົ່າໃດ?...ທໍ່ໃດ?
- the ອີກ construction

COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGE: FRAME 1

| | |
|--|--|
| <p>ມາລີ: ເຮືອນເຈົ້າຢູ່ໃສ?</p> <p>ຈອນ: ຢູ່ເລກທີ 281 ຖະໜົນ ເສດຖາທິລາດ</p> <p>ມາລີ: ບ່ອນເຮັດວຽກຂອງເຈົ້າເດ ຢູ່ໃສ?</p> <p>ຈອນ: ຢູ່ ເຮືອນພັກ ລານີ II ຖະໜົນສາຍລົມ</p> | <p>Mali: Where is your house?</p> <p>John: At No. 281 Setthathirath Road.</p> <p>Malee: And your office?</p> <p>John: At Lani II Guest House, Saylom Road.</p> |
|--|--|

EXPANSION DRILL

| | |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| ຢູ່ໃສ? | Where is it? |
| ເຮືອນເຈົ້າຢູ່ໃສ? | Where is your house? |
| ເລກທີ/ນ້ຳເບີ | Number |
| ຢູ່ເລກທີ | (It's) At number... |
| ສອງຮ້ອຍ | 200 |
| ສອງຮ້ອຍແປດສິບ | 280 |
| ສອງຮ້ອຍແປດສິບເອັດ | 281 |
| ຖະໜົນ | Road |
| ຖະໜົນ ເສດຖາທິລາດ | Setthathirath Road |
| ບ່ອນເຮັດວຽກ | Place of work; office |
| ບ່ອນເຮັດວຽກຂອງເຈົ້າເດ? | What about your office? |
| ຢູ່ໃສ? | Where? |
| ບ່ອນເຮັດວຽກຂອງເຈົ້າຢູ່ໃສ? | Where is your office? |
| ຢູ່ ລານີ II | It's at Lani II. |
| ຖະໜົນ ສາຍລົມ | Saylom Road |

SUBSTITUTION DRILLS:

MODEL

Question: Where is your house?

ເຮືອນເຈົ້າຢູ່ໃສ?

Answer: My house is at number...Street

ຢູ່ເລກທີ...ຖະໜົນ...

| | | | | |
|----------------|----------|------|-------|-------------|
| Answer: | ຢູ່ເລກທີ | | ຖະໜົນ | |
| | ↓ | 936 | ↓ | Forest Hill |
| | ↓ | 1200 | ↓ | Rio |
| | ↓ | 24 | ↓ | Oak Knoll |
| | ↓ | 96 | ↓ | Monte Vista |

MODEL

Question: Where is your office?

Answer: It's at No...Street...

Question: ບ່ອນເຮັດວຽກຂອງເຈົ້າຢູ່ໃສ?

| | | | | |
|----------------|----------|------------------|-------|----------------|
| Answer: | ຢູ່ເລກທີ | | ຖະໜົນ | |
| | ↓ | 78 | ↓ | ຄູວຽງ |
| | ↓ | ສັນຕິສຸກ | ↓ | ທໍ່ແກ້ວກຸມມານ |
| | ↓ | ສະຖານທູດອະເມລິກາ | ↓ | ຖະໜົນ ບາໂຕໂລນີ |

COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGE: FRAME 2

| | |
|--|--|
| <p>ສິນທະຣາດ: ເຈົ້າພັກຢູ່ໃສ?</p> <p>ຈອນ: ຂ້ອຍພັກຢູ່ໂຮງແຮມອານຸ</p> <p>ສິນທະຣາດ: ເຈົ້າຈະພັກຢູ່ຫັ້ນຈັກມື້?</p> <p>ຈອນ: ອີກສາມມື້ ແລ້ວຂ້ອຍ ຊິໄປ ຫຼວງພະບາງ</p> | <p>Sintharath: Where are you staying at?</p> <p>John: I am staying at the Anou Hotel.</p> <p>Sintharath: How many days will you be staying there?</p> <p>John: Three more days, then I will go to Luang Prabang.</p> |
|--|--|

DRILL

| | |
|--------------------------|--|
| ພັກ | To stay |
| ພັກຢູ່ | To be staying at, to stay at |
| ພັກຢູ່ໃສ? | Where are (you) staying? |
| ເຈົ້າພັກຢູ່ໃສ? | Where are you staying? |
| ໂຮງແຮມ | Hotel |
| ອານຸ | Anou (Proper noun) |
| ໂຮງແຮມອານຸ | The Anou hotel |
| ພັກຢູ່ຫັ້ນ | Staying there |
| ຈັກມື້? | How many days? |
| ເຈົ້າຊິພັກຢູ່ຫັ້ນຈັກມື້? | How many days will you be staying there? |
| ອີກສາມມື້ | Three more days |
| ແລ້ວ | Then |
| ຂ້ອຍຊິໄປຫລວງພະບາງ | I will go to Luang Prabang (city). |

RESPONSE DRILL: Respond affirmatively

MODEL

Question: Will you go to Luang Prabang?

Answer: Yes, I will go to Luang Prabang.

ຖາມ: ເຈົ້າຊິໄປຫລວງພະບາງບໍ?

ຕອບ: ໄປ ຂ້ອຍຊິໄປຫລວງພະບາງ

ຖາມ: ເຈົ້າຊິໄປເຮັດວຽກບໍ?

ຕອບ: ໄປ ຂ້ອຍຊິໄປເຮັດວຽກ

ຖາມ: ເຈົ້າຊິອ່ານປຶ້ມບໍ?

ຕອບ: ອ່ານ ຂ້ອຍຊິອ່ານປຶ້ມ

ຖາມ: ເຈົ້າຊິເວົ້າບໍ?

ຕອບ: ເວົ້າ ຂ້ອຍຊິເວົ້າ

RESPONSE DRILL: Respond negatively.

MODEL

Question: Will you go to Vang Vieng?

Answer: No, I will not go to Vang Vieng.

ຖາມ: ເຈົ້າຊິໄປຫຼວງພະບາງບໍ?

ຕອບ: ບໍ່ ຂ້ອຍຊິບໍ່ໄປຫຼວງພະບາງ.

ຖາມ: ເຈົ້າຊິໄປເຮັດວຽກບໍ?

ຕອບ: ບໍ່ ຂ້ອຍຊິບໍ່ໄປເຮັດວຽກ.

ຖາມ: ເຈົ້າຊິອ່ານປຶ້ມບໍ?

ຕອບ: ບໍ່ ຂ້ອຍຊິບໍ່ອ່ານປຶ້ມ.

RESPONSE DRILL: Respond affirmatively.

MODEL

Question: Are you reading?

Answer: Yes, I am reading.

ຖາມ: ເຈົ້າກຳລັງອ່ານປຶ້ມຢູ່ບໍ?

ຕອບ: ອ່ານ ຂ້ອຍກຳລັງອ່ານປຶ້ມຢູ່

ຖາມ: ລາວກຳລັງຊຽນຢູ່ບໍ?

ຕອບ: ຊຽນ ລາວກຳລັງຊຽນຢູ່.

ຖາມ: ລາວກຳລັງເຮັດວຽກຢູ່ບໍ?

ຕອບ: ເຮັດ ລາວກຳລັງເຮັດວຽກຢູ່.

RESPONSE DRILL: Respond negatively.

MODEL

Question: Are you reading?

Answer: No, I am not.

ຖາມ: ເຈົ້າກຳລັງອ່ານປຶ້ມຢູ່ບໍ?

ຕອບ: ບໍ່ ຂ້ອຍບໍ່ໄດ້ອ່ານປຶ້ມ.

ຖາມ: ລາວກຳລັງຮຽນຢູ່ບໍ?

ຕອບ: ບໍ່ ລາວບໍ່ໄດ້ຮຽນ.

ຖາມ: ເພື່ອນເຈົ້າກຳລັງເຮັດວຽກຢູ່ບໍ?

ຕອບ: ບໍ່ ລາວບໍ່ໄດ້ເຮັດວຽກ.

COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGE: FRAME 3

| | |
|--|---|
| <p>ສິນທະຣາດ: ເຮືອນຂອງເຈົ້າແມ່ນເລກທີເທົ່າໃດ?</p> <p>ຈອນ: ເລກທີ 259</p> <p>ສິນທະຣາດ: ຢູ່ຖະໜົນໃດ?</p> <p>ຈອນ: ຖະໜົນ ສຸພານຸວົງ</p> <p>ສິນທະຣາດ: ເຈົ້າມີເບີໂທລະສັບບໍ?</p> <p>ຈອນ: ມີ ຂ້ອຍມີເບີໂທລະສັບ</p> <p>ສິນທະຣາດ: ເບີຫຍັງ?</p> <p>ຈອນ: ເບີ 21 251 1199</p> | <p>Sintharath: What is your house number?</p> <p>John: # 259.</p> <p>Sintharath: What street?</p> <p>John: Souphanouvong Ave.</p> <p>Sintharath: Do you have a telephone number?</p> <p>John: Yes, I have telephone number.</p> <p>Sintharath: What's the number?</p> <p>John: 21 251 11 99</p> |
|--|---|

EXPANSION DRILLS

| | |
|----------------------------|--|
| ທ່າໃດ?/ເທົ່າໃດ? | How much? |
| ເລກທີ/ນ້ຳເບີ | Number |
| ເລກທີເທົ່າໃດ? | What's the number? |
| ເຮືອນຂອງເຈົ້າເລກທີເທົ່າໃດ? | What is your house number? |
| ເລກທີ / ນ້ຳເບີ ໒໕໙ | No. 259 |
| ຖະໜົນ | Street, road, highway, avenue, boulevard |
| ຖະໜົນໃດ? | Which street? |
| ຮ່ອມ/ຖະໜົນທີ 23 | Alley 23; 23 rd Street |
| ຮ່ອມ | Off the main street; lane; path |
| ຖະໜົນ ສຸພານຸວົງ | Souphanouvong Ave |
| ສຸພານຸວົງ ຮ່ອມທີ 23 | 23 rd Street off of Souphanouvong Ave |
| ໂທລະສັບ | Telephone |

RESPONSE DRILL:

MODEL

Question: What is your house number?

(Cue: 289)

Answer: # 289**ຖາມ:** ເຮືອນເຈົ້າເລກທີເທົ່າໃດ?

289

ຕອບ: ເລກທີ 289**ຖາມ:** ເຮືອນລາວເລກທີເທົ່າໃດ?

165

ຕອບ: ເລກທີ 165**ຖາມ:** ບ່ອນເຮັດວຽກລາວເລກທີເທົ່າໃດ?

32-35

ຕອບ: ເລກທີ 32 – 35**ຖາມ:** ຫ້ອງເຈົ້າເລກທີເທົ່າໃດ?/(ຫ້ອງເຈົ້າເບີຫຍັງ?)

7

ຕອບ: ເລກທີ 7

MODEL

Question: What is your telephone number?

(Cue: 394-6199)

Answer: 394-6199**ຖາມ:** ໂທລະສັບຂອງເຈົ້າ ແມ່ນເບີຫຍັງ?

394-6199

ຕອບ: ເບີ ໓໙໔ - ໖໑໙໙**ຖາມ:** ໂທລະສັບສະຖານທູດອະເມລິກາ ແມ່ນເບີຫຍັງ?

21-267000

ຕອບ: ເບີ ໒໑ - ໒໖໗໐໐໐**ຖາມ:** ໂທລະສັບບ່ອນເຮັດວຽກ ແມ່ນເບີຫຍັງ?

647-5527 ext. 18

ຕອບ: ເບີ ໖໔໗ - ໕໕໔໗ ໗ຕໍ່ ໑໘໘

REPETITION DRILL:

MODEL

- | | |
|------------------|---|
| 1. ເລກທີເທົ່າໃດ? | What (how much) is the number? (house number) |
| 2. ເບີຫຍັງ? | What is the number? (telephone) |
| 3. ເລກທີເທົ່າໃດ? | What (how much) is the number? |
| 4. ເບີຫຍັງ? | What is the number? |

SUPPLEMENTARY EXPRESSIONS

The following are some useful expressions for telephone conversation.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. ອາໂຫລ | Hello. |
| 2. ນີ້ແມ່ນ x ເວົ້າສາຍ | This is X speaking. |
| 3. ກະລຸນາເວົ້າອີກເທື່ອໜຶ່ງໄດ້ບໍ? | Could you say it again please? |
| 4. ກະລຸນາເວົ້າດັງໆແດ່ | Please speak louder. |
| 5. ທ່ານຕ້ອງການຝາກຂໍ້ຄວາມຫຍັງໄວ້ບໍ? | Do you want to leave any message? |
| 6. ທ່ານຢາກຝາກຂໍ້ຄວາມຫຍັງໄວ້ບໍ? | Would you like to leave any message? |

DIALOGUE FOR LISTENING

| | |
|--|---|
| <p>ສົມພອນ: ເຮືອນເຈົ້າຢູ່ໃສ?</p> <p>ຈອນ: ຢູ່ຖະໜົນ ສຸພານນຸວົງ</p> <p>ສົມພອນ: ບ້ານເລກທີເທົ່າໃດ?</p> <p>ຈອນ: ເລກທີ ໒໕໐໐</p> <p>ສົມພອນ: ເຈົ້າມີໂທລະສັບບໍ່?</p> <p>ຈອນ: ມີ ຂ້ອຍມີໂທລະສັບ</p> <p>ສົມພອນ: ເບີຫຍັງ?</p> <p>ຈອນ: ເບີ ໓໕໒ - ໑໑໘໗</p> <p>ສົມພອນ: ເບີໂທລະສັບບ່ອນເຮັດວຽກເດ ເບີຫຍັງ?</p> <p>ຈອນ: ໒໒໔ - ໖໐໐໘</p> <p>ສົມພອນ: ເພື່ອນເຈົ້າຈະມາພັກຢູ່ບ້ານເຈົ້າ ຫຼື ມາພັກຢູ່ໂຮງແຮມ?</p> <p>ຈອນ: ລາວຊົມາພັກຢູ່ບ້ານຂ້ອຍ ສາມມື້ ເທົ່ານັ້ນ ແລ້ວລາວຊິໄປຫຼວງພະບາງ</p> | <p>Somphone: Where is your house?</p> <p>John: Souphanouvong Road.</p> <p>Somphone: What's the house number?</p> <p>John: 2509.</p> <p>Somphone: Do you have a phone?</p> <p>John: Yes, I do.</p> <p>Somphone: What's your phone number?</p> <p>John: 352-1187.</p> <p>Somphone: What about your work phone number?</p> <p>John: 224-6098.</p> <p>Somphone: Is your friend going to stay at your house or at a hotel?</p> <p>John: He will stay at my house for only three days and then he will go to Luang Prabang.</p> |
|--|---|

STRUCTURE APPLICATIONS AND CULTURAL NOTES

FRAME 1

1. ເລກ means *number*, and it is used as a prefix for the number of various things, for example, house number, serial number, etc.

2. ບ່ອນເຮັດວຽກ means *place of work*, which includes an office and any place where a person performs his/her work.

FRAME 2

1. ພັກ means *to stay*. It is usually used in conjunction with the word ຢູ່: *to be, to be located at*.

2. ກຳລັງ...ຢູ່ is a tense marker used to indicate that the subject is doing something. It is similar to the *-ing* construction in English.

EXAMPLES

ລາວກຳລັງເວົ້າຢູ່

He is speaking.

ຂ້ອຍກຳລັງອ່ານປຶ້ມຢູ່

I am reading (a book).

3. ຈະ, ຊິ is a future marker meaning *will*. It is normally used like English, before the verb.

EXAMPLE

ລາວຊິໄປ

He *will* go.

To negate a sentence with the future tense ຊິ, use the negative ບໍ່ after ຊິ

EXAMPLE

ລາວຊິບໍ່ໄປ

He will *not* go .

4. ອີກ means *more* when it is used with a unit and a classifier.

EXAMPLES

| ອີກ | + | UNIT | + | CLASSIFIER |
|-----|---|------|---|---------------------|
| ↓ | | 3 | | ຄົນ (3 more people) |
| ↓ | | 5 | | ມື້ (5 more days) |

FRAME 3

1. ເລກທີເທົ່າໃດ *What is the number? or Which one (of an ordered series)?* ທີ, in this case, indicates a position in a numbered series. ທີ can also be used with numerals to form ordinals such as ທີໜຶ່ງ *first*, ທີສອງ *second*.

2. ເປີ comes from the English word *number*. Though ເປີ and ເລກ have the same meaning and they can be used interchangeably, they take different question words.

ເລກທີເທົ່າໃດ?

What's the number?

ເປັນຫຍັງ?

What's the number?

3. When reading a house number in Lao, read off the whole number.

EXAMPLES

| | |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| 2510 will be read | ສອງພັນ-ຫ້າຮ້ອຍ-ສິບ |
| 382 will be read | ສາມຮ້ອຍ-ແປດສິບ-ສອງ |
| 165 will be read | ຮ້ອຍ-ຫົກສິບ-ຫ້າ |
| 162 will be read | ຮ້ອຍ-ຫົກສິບ-ສອງ |

However, it is also common to read off each number separately.

EXAMPLES

| | |
|---------------------------------|------------------|
| House No. 2510 can also be read | ສອງ-ຫ້າ-ໜຶ່ງ-ສູນ |
| House No. 382 can also be read | ສາມ-ແປດ-ສອງ |
| House No. 165 will be read | ໜຶ່ງ-ຫົກ-ຫ້າ |
| House No. 169 will be read | ໜຶ່ງ-ຫົກ-ເກົ້າ |

4. Each number is read separately in Lao, as in English, for a phone number.

EXAMPLES

| | |
|-------------------------------|---|
| 398-6413 will be read | ສາມ-ເກົ້າ-ແປດ-ຫົກ-ສີ່-ໜຶ່ງ-ສາມ |
| 899-5361 will be read | ແປດ-ເກົ້າ-ເກົ້າ-ຫ້າ-ສາມ-ຫົກ-ໜຶ່ງ |
| 242-9728 will be read | ສອງ-ສີ່-ສອງ-ເກົ້າ-ເຈັດ-ສອງ-ແປດ |
| 645-7063-6 will be read | ຫົກ-ສີ່-ຫ້າ-ເຈັດ-ສູນ-ຫົກ-ສາມ-ເກົ້າ-ຫົກ |
| 846-7947 ext. 18 will be read | ແປດ-ສີ່-ຫົກ-ເຈັດ-ເກົ້າ-ສີ່-ເຈັດ-ຕໍ່ສິບແປດ |

5. ຮ້ອມ is a lane, path or a small side street or alley. ຖະໜົນ is the name of a main thoroughfare in Vientiane.

EXERCISE

A. Write the number of the Lao sentence in the space provided in front of the English translation that matches the Lao sentence.

| | | |
|-----|-------------------------------|--|
| 1. | ເຮືອນເຈົ້າເລກທີເທົ່າໃດ? | () Will your wife go? |
| 2. | ຊື່ຖະໜົນຫຍັງ? | () What are you doing? |
| 3. | ບ່ອນເຮັດວຽກລາວຢູ່ໃສ? | () Where are you staying at? |
| 4. | ເຈົ້າພັກຢູ່ໃສ? | () What is your phone number? |
| 5. | ຂ້ອຍບໍ່ໄດ້ພັກຢູ່ໂຮງແຮມ | () How many more days before you go to Luang Prabang? |
| 6. | ເມຍເຈົ້າຊີໄປບໍ? | () What is your house number? |
| 7. | ອີກຈັກມື້ ເຈົ້າຊີໄປຫຼວງພະບາງ? | () His house is on 2 nd Street. |
| 8. | ເຈົ້າກຳລັງເຮັດຫຍັງຢູ່? | () What is the name of the street? |
| 9. | ເຮືອນຂອງລາວຢູ່ຮ່ອມ ທີ ໑ | () Where is his office? |
| 10. | ໂທລະສັບເຈົ້າແມ່ນເບີຫຍັງ? | () I am not staying at a hotel. |

B. Write the English equivalent for each Lao number given below.

- | | |
|---------------|------------------------------|
| 1. ຜົນໆ _____ | 6. ຜົນໆ/ໜຶ່ງ _____ |
| 2. ລວມໆ _____ | 7. ຜົນໆ/ຜົນ-ໜຶ່ງ _____ |
| 3. ຜົນໆ _____ | 8. ຊຸດໆ - ຜົນໆ _____ |
| 4. ຜົນໆ _____ | 9. ຜົນໆ - ຜົນໆ - ລວມ _____ |
| 5. ຜົນໆ _____ | 10. ຜົນໆ-ຜົນໆ ຕໍ່ ຜົນໆ _____ |

C. Change the following sentence into the future tense: ຊື່

ເມຍລາວໄປເມືອງລາວ _____

D. Change the Lao sentence below into the present tense. ກຳລັງ...ຢູ່?

ເພື່ອນເຈົ້າເຮັດຫຍັງ? _____

E. Rewrite the Lao sentence below into a negative sentence. ບໍ່?

ລາວຊື່ໄປເຮັດວຽກ _____

F. Change the following Lao sentence into a negative sentence. ບໍ່...ຊື່ບໍ່

ຂ້ອຍອ່ານປຶ້ມ _____

CONVERSATION EXERCISES (ROLE-PLAYS)

1. Discuss the information in the *Dialogue for Listening*. The following questions must be included in the discussion.

- Where did the dialogue take place?
- On what street did one of the speakers live?
- What was the house number?
- What was the telephone number?
- Who was coming?
- Where was he going to stay?
- For how long?
- Where would he go afterward?

2. The instructor asks each student his/her address and telephone number.

3. The students take turns asking one another's address and telephone number.

4. Discuss hotels in this town. The point of discussion should include:

- Hotels where most people like to stay
- Address
- Whether any member of the class has stayed there
- Any other hotel that anyone wishes to recommend.

5. Discuss the location of certain places in Vientiane or any city in Laos that might be of interest to the students. The places should include:

- U.S. Embassy
- Restaurants
- Good hotels
- Popular residential areas.

VOCABULARY

| | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. ເຮືອນ | House |
| 2. ເບີ | <u>Number</u> |
| 3. ອີກ | More; another; again |
| 4. ກຳລັງ...ຢູ່ | In the process of (present tense) |
| 5. ເລກທີ | Number (in numerical sequence) |
| 6. ເລກທີເທົ່າໃດ? | What is the number? |
| 7. ພັກ | To stay |
| 8. ພັນ | Thousand |
| 9. ຮ້ອຍ | Hundred |
| 10. ໂຮງແຮມ | Hotel |
| 11. ສາຍລົມ | Name of a street in Vientiane |
| 12. ລ້ານຊ້າງ | Name of a street in Vientiane |
| 13. ຮ່ອມ | Lane, side-street, path, alley |
| 14. ຖະໜົນ | Street road, boulevard, way |
| 15. ນີ້, ນັ້ນ, ຫັ້ນ, ພູ້ນ | Here; there; over there, over yonder |
| 16. ບ່ອນເຮັດວຽກ | Place of work; office |
| 17. ເທົ່າໃດ? | How much? |
| 18. ໂທລະສັບ | Telephone |
| 19. ສູນ | Zero |
| 20. ມື້, ວັນ | Day |
| 21. ອາທິດ | Week |
| 22. ເດືອນ | Month |
| 23. ປີ | Year |

LESSON QUIZ

A. Compose the questions to the following given answers.

1. ຈອນ: _____

ຈັບສະໝອນ: ຢູ່ເຮືອນເລກທີ ໗໔໑/໒ ຖະໜົນ ລ້ານຊ້າງ ຮອ່ມ ມີ໔

2. ຈອນ: _____

ຈັບສະໝອນ: ໂທລະສັບບ້ານຂ້ອຍແມ່ນເບີ ດີດີ໔ – ມີ໔໘໙

3. ຈອນ: _____

ຈັບສະໝອນ: ໂທລະສັບບ່ອນເຮັດວຽກຂ້ອຍແມ່ນເບີ ໔໑໓ – ໗໐໑໔


B. Match the questions and answers.


| | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|---|
| — | ຜູ້ຍິງຄົນນັ້ນ ເປັນເພື່ອນເຈົ້າແມ່ນບໍ? | 1. In Luang Prabang. |
| — | ລາວເຮັດວຽກຢູ່ໃສ? | 2. For a couple of days. |
| — | ລາວພັກຢູ່ເຮືອນເຈົ້າ ແມ່ນບໍ? | 3. Sure, but I think she is on the phone right now. |
| — | ລາວຈະພັກຢູ່ຫັ້ນ ຈັກມີ້? | 4. Yes, she is. |
| — | ຂ້ອຍຂໍເວົ້າກັບລາວໄດ້ບໍ? | 5. No, she is staying at a hotel. |

 ເຈົ້າເວົ້າພາສາລາວເກັ່ງ
(You Speak Lao Well)

OBJECTIVES

Upon completion of this lesson, you will be able to:

-  discuss information about where you learned Lao, specifically:
 - give an appropriate response to a compliment that you speak Lao well
 - answer the question where you studied the language
 - answer the question how long you studied the language

-  use the following expressions and grammatical features correctly: the usage of, ມາ as a tense indicator, as a preposition, and as a main verb as part of the present perfect tense
 - the auxiliary verb ເຄີຍ *to have ever... used to...*
 - the expression ເກັ່ງ good...skillful... ເກັ່ງອີ່ຫລີ... really good

COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGE: FRAME 1

| | |
|---|---|
| <p>ສິນທະຣາດ: ເຈົ້າເວົ້າພາສາລາວເກັ່ງອີ່ຫຼີ ເຈົ້າຮຽນມາຈາກໃສ?</p> <p>ຈິມ: ຂອບໃຈ ຂ້ອຍຮຽນມາຈາກສະຖາບັນພາສາຕ່າງປະເທດຂອງກະຊວງການຕ່າງປະເທດສະຫະລັດ</p> <p>ສິນທະຣາດ: ເຈົ້າຮຽນດົນປານໃດ?</p> <p>ຈິມ: ປີໜຶ່ງ.</p> <p>ສິນທະຣາດ: ເຈົ້າອ່ານ ແລະ ຊຽນ ໄດ້ຄືກັນບໍ?</p> <p>ຈິມ: ພໍໄດ້ ແຕ່ບໍ່ເກັ່ງປານໃດ</p> | <p>Sintharath: You speak Lao very well. Where did you study?</p> <p>Jim: Thank you. I studied at the Foreign Language School of the U.S.State Department.</p> <p>Sintharath: How long did you study?</p> <p>Jim: One year.</p> <p>Sintharath: Can you read and write also?</p> <p>Jim: Yes, I can read and write but not very well.</p> |
|---|---|

EXPANSION DRILL

| | |
|------------------------------|--|
| ເຈົ້າເວົ້າພາສາລາວ | You speak Lao. |
| ເກັ່ງອີ່ຫຼີ | very well (really skillful) |
| ເຈົ້າຮຽນມາຈາກໃສ? | Where did you study? |
| ຂອບໃຈ | Thank you. |
| ຮຽນທີ່, ຮຽນຢູ່ | studied at... |
| ສະຖາບັນພາສາຕ່າງປະເທດ | Foreign Language Institute |
| ຂອງ | of (possessive) |
| ກະຊວງການຕ່າງປະເທດ | Department of State |
| ເຈົ້າອ່ານ ແລະ ຊຽນໄດ້ຄືກັນບໍ? | Can you also read and write? |
| ພໍໄດ້ | enough (enough to get by); sufficient, a little bit |
| ແຕ່ບໍ່ເກັ່ງປານໃດ | but not that well |

SUBSTITUTION DRILL

1. Making a positive comment about someone.

| ເຈົ້າ | ຄົວກິນ | ເກົ້າ |
|-------|--------------|-------|
| ↓ | ຮຽນ | ↓ |
| ↓ | ເວົ້າພາສາລາວ | ↓ |
| ↓ | ຂັບລົດ | ↓ |
| ↓ | ລອຍນ້ຳ | ↓ |
| ↓ | ຫຼິ້ນກີລາ | ↓ |
| ↓ | ພ້ອນລຳ | ↓ |
| ↓ | ແຕ້ມຮູບ | ↓ |

2. Complimenting someone.

| ເຈົ້າ | | ເກົ້າ |
|-------|-------------------|-------|
| ↓ | ແປງລົດ | ↓ |
| | ເຮັດວຽກ / ເຮັດການ | |
| | ອ່ານພາສາລາວ | |
| | ຂຽນພາສາລາວ | |
| | ຮ້ອງເພງ | |
| | ພ້ອນ | |
| | ເວົ້າ | |
| | ຂຽນ | |
| | ກິນ | |
| | ສອນ | |
| | ລົມ | |

3. MAKING A COMMENT ABOUT SOMETHING

| |
|-------------------|
| ມີນີ້ ອາກາດດີຫຼາຍ |
|-------------------|

ອາກາດຮ້ອນຫຼາຍ

ລາວງາມຫຼາຍ

ລາຄາອາຫານແພງຫຼາຍ

ຮຽນຫຼາຍ

ບົດຮຽນຍາກຫຼາຍ

ເມື່ອຍຫຼາຍ

RESPONSE DRILL

Responding to the question: *Where did you study Lao?*

ເຈົ້າຮຽນພາສາລາວມາຈາກໃສ?

ຂ້ອຍຮຽນມາຈາກໂຮງຮຽນລັດ

Responding to the question: *How long did you study Lao.*

ເຈົ້າຮຽນພາສາລາວດົນປານໃດ?

ຂ້ອຍຮຽນ(ໄດ້) 44 ອາທິດ

ຂ້ອຍຮຽນ(ໄດ້) 6 ເດືອນ

ຂ້ອຍຮຽນ(ໄດ້) 3 ເດືອນ

Asking and responding: *Can you speak Lao?*

ຖາມ: ເຈົ້າເວົ້າພາສາລາວໄດ້ບໍ່?

ຕອບ: ພໍເວົ້າໄດ້ ແຕ່ບໍ່ເກັ່ງຫຼາຍ

ຖາມ: ເຈົ້າອ່ານພາສາລາວໄດ້ບໍ່?

ຕອບ: ພໍອ່ານໄດ້ ແຕ່ບໍ່ເກັ່ງຫຼາຍ

ຖາມ: ເຈົ້າຂຽນພາສາລາວໄດ້ບໍ່?

ຕອບ: ພໍຂຽນໄດ້ ແຕ່ບໍ່ເກັ່ງຫຼາຍ

ຯລຯ

COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGE: FRAME 2

| | |
|---|---|
| <p>ວຽງໄຊ: ເຈົ້າເປັນທະຫານດົນປານໃດ? ສົບເອກຈົມ: ສິບປີ ວຽງໄຊ: ເຈົ້າເດີນທາງມາປະເທດລາວ ຈັກເທື່ອ? ສົບເອກຈົມ: ເທື່ອນີ້ ເປັນເທື່ອທຳອິດ</p> | <p>Viengxay: How long have you been in the service? SGT Jim: Ten years. Viengxay: How many times have you come to Laos? SGT Jim: This is the first time.</p> |
|---|---|

EXPANSION DRILL

| | |
|--------------------|---------------------------------|
| ເຈົ້າເຄີຍເປັນທະຫານ | You have been in the service... |
| ດົນປານໃດ? | (for) how long? |
| ສິບປີ | ten years |
| ເຄີຍມາປະເທດລາວ | have come to Laos... |
| ຈັກເທື່ອແລ້ວ? | how many times (already)? |
| ເທື່ອນີ້ | This time... |
| ເປັນເທື່ອທຳອິດ | is the first time |

SUBSTITUTION DRILL

Asking the question: *How long have you done/been doing something?*

- ເຈົ້າເປັນນັກຮຽນດົນປານໃດ?
- ຂະເຈົ້າເປັນຕຳຫຼວດດົນປານໃດ?
- ເພິ່ນຮຽນຄົວກິນດົນປານໃດ?
- ທ່ານຢູ່ເມືອງວຽງຈັນດົນປານໃດ?
- ເຈົ້າເຮັດວຽກຢູ່ນີ້ ດົນປານໃດ?
- ນັກກີລາຫຼິ້ນກີລາດົນປານໃດ?

RESPONSE DRILL

1. Different ways of asking questions: *How long have you done/ been doing something?*

ຖາມ: ເຈົ້າເປັນຕຳຫຼວດດົນປານໃດແລ້ວ?

ຕອບ: ຂ້ອຍເປັນຕຳຫຼວດ (ໄດ້) 4 ປີແລ້ວ

ຂ້ອຍເປັນນັກການທູດ (ໄດ້) 10 ເດືອນແລ້ວ

ຂ້ອຍເປັນທະຫານ (ໄດ້) 6 ອາທິດແລ້ວ

ຂ້ອຍເປັນນາຍຄູ (ໄດ້) 4 ມື້ແລ້ວ

2. Responding to the questions: *How long have you done / been doing something*

ຖາມ: ເຈົ້າເປັນນັກການທູດມາ(ໄດ້)ດົນປານໃດແລ້ວ?

ຕອບ: ຂ້ອຍເປັນນັກການທູດມາ (ໄດ້) 10 ປີແລ້ວ

ຖາມ: ເຈົ້າເປັນພໍ່ຄົວມາ(ໄດ້)ດົນປານໃດແລ້ວ?

ຕອບ: ຂ້ອຍ ບັນພໍ່ຄົວມາ (ໄດ້) 6 ເດືອນແລ້ວ

ຖາມ: ເຈົ້າຮຽນພາສາລາວມາ(ໄດ້)ດົນປານໃດແລ້ວ?

ຕອບ: ຂ້ອຍຮຽນພາສາລາວມາ (ໄດ້) 8 ອາທິດແລ້ວ

ຖາມ: ເຂົາເຈົ້າ / ຂະເຈົ້າ ແຕ່ງງານມາ(ໄດ້)ຈັກປີແລ້ວ?

ຕອບ: ເຂົາເຈົ້າ / ຂະເຈົ້າແຕ່ງງານມາ(ໄດ້) 40 ປີແລ້ວ

ຖາມ: ເຈົ້າຢູ່ເມືອງລາວຈັກມື້ແລ້ວ?

ຕອບ: ຂ້ອຍຢູ່ເມືອງລາວ (ໄດ້) 3 ມື້ແລ້ວ

3. Responding affirmatively to the question *with ເຄີຍ...ever; used to ...?*

ຖາມ: ເຈົ້າເຄີຍ(ໄດ້)ໄປຕ່າງປະເທດບໍ?

ຕອບ: ເຄີຍ ຂ້ອຍເຄີຍ(ໄດ້)ໄປຕ່າງປະເທດ (ມາແລ້ວ)

ຖາມ: ເຈົ້າເຄີຍ(ໄດ້)ກິນລາບໄກ່ບໍ?

ຕອບ ເຄີຍ ຂ້ອຍເຄີຍ(ໄດ້)ກິນລາບໄກ່

ຖາມ: ເຈົ້າເຄີຍ(ໄດ້)ແປງລົດບໍ່?

ຕອບ: ເຄີຍ ຂ້ອຍເຄີຍ(ໄດ້)ແປງລົດ

ຖາມ: ເຈົ້າເຄີຍ(ໄດ້)ເປັນຂ້າລັດຖະການພາສີບໍ່?

ຕອບ: ເຄີຍ ຂ້ອຍເຄີຍ(ໄດ້)ເປັນຂ້າລັດຖະການພາສີ

4. Responding negatively to the question with: ບໍ່. . .ບໍ່ເຄີຍ . *never* . . .?

ຖາມ: ເຈົ້າເຄີຍ(ໄດ້)ໄປຕ່າງປະເທດບໍ່?

ຕອບ: ບໍ່ ຂ້ອຍບໍ່ເຄີຍ(ໄດ້)ໄປຕ່າງປະເທດ

ຖາມ: ເຈົ້າເຄີຍ(ໄດ້)ຊົມຊື່ນຄວາຍບໍ່?

ຕອບ: ບໍ່ ຂ້ອຍບໍ່ເຄີຍ(ໄດ້)ຊົມຊື່ນຄວາຍ

ຖາມ: ເຈົ້າເຄີຍ(ໄດ້)ເປັນເຈົ້າໜ້າທີ່ກະຊວງການຕ່າງປະເທດບໍ່?

ຕອບ: ບໍ່ ຂ້ອຍບໍ່ເຄີຍ(ໄດ້)ເປັນເຈົ້າໜ້າທີ່ກະຊວງການຕ່າງປະເທດ

ຖາມ: ເຈົ້າເຄີຍ(ໄດ້)ເປັນນັກຮ້ອງເພງບໍ່?

ຕອບ: ບໍ່ ຂ້ອຍບໍ່ເຄີຍ(ໄດ້)ເປັນນັກຮ້ອງເພງ

COMMON CLASSIFIERS

There are a number of classifiers in Lao. The following are the common ones:

ຄົນ - for people

ຫລັງ - for houses, building

ຄັນ - for cars, motorcycles

ໂຕ - for animals

ຫົວ - for books

ຄູ່ - for pairs

ສະບັບ - for newspapers, magazine

ລໍາ - for boats, airplanes

ຜືນ - for clothing, material

ໃບ - for paper, leaves

ມ້ວນ / ກີ້ - for rolls

ໜ່ວຍ - for balls, furniture, electronic devices, fruits, unit (law enforcement, military, government departments)

Fill in the blanks with an appropriate classifier:

1. ນັກຮຽນສາມ
2. ລົດສອງ
3. ເຮືອບິນຫ້າ
4. ນັກວິທະຍາສາດແປດ
5. ລົດຈັກເກົ້າ
6. ລູກຊາຍສີ່
7. ເຮືອສິບສາມ
8. ເສື້ອສອງ
9. ເຈ້ຍຫົກ
10. ໜັງສືພິມເຈັດ
11. ເຮືອນສາມ
12. ນົກຊາວ
13. ປື້ມສີ່
14. ເກີບແປດ
15. ມ້າພັນ
16. ກອກຢາສູບຫ້າ

COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGE: FRAME 3

| | |
|--|---|
| <p>ແດງ: ເຈົ້າຊຶ່ງນີ້ດົນປານໃດ?</p> <p>ຈິມ: ຂ້ອຍຊຶ່ງນີ້ເພື່ອຝຶກອົບຮົມອີກ ອາທິດໜຶ່ງແລ້ວຂ້ອຍຈະລົງໄປ ສະຫວັນນະເຂດ</p> <p>ແດງ: ເຈົ້າຊຶ່ງໄປທາງການ ຫຼື ໄປທ່ຽວ?</p> <p>ຈິມ: ທັງສອງ (ທັງເຮັດການແລະໄປທ່ຽວນຳ)</p> | <p>Daeng: How long are you going to stay here?</p> <p>Jim: I will stay here for training one more week then I'll go down to Savannakhet.</p> <p>Daeng: Are you going there to work or for fun?</p> <p>Jim: Both (to work and for fun also).</p> |
|--|---|

EXPANSION DRILL

| | |
|-------------------------|--|
| ເຈົ້າຊຶ່ງຢູ່ນີ້ | you will stay here... |
| ອີກດົນປານໃດ? | How much longer? |
| ໜ່ວຍວຽກຂ້ອຍ | my work unit... |
| ຝຶກອົບລົມນຳທະຫານລາວ | to train with Lao soldiers |
| ຢູ່ນີ້ | here |
| ຈົນຮອດອາທິດໜ້າ | until next week |
| ແຕ່ຂ້ອຍຈະຢູ່ເມືອງລາວ | but I will be in Laos |
| ອີກເດືອນໜຶ່ງ | for one more month; for another month |
| ເພາະວ່າ ຂ້ອຍຊິໄປພາກໃຕ້ | because I will go to the southern region |
| ຊິໄປເຮັດວຽກ | will go to work. |
| ຫຼື | or |
| ໄປຫຼິ້ນໄປທ່ຽວ | go there for fun |
| ທັງສອງ | both |
| ທັງເຮັດວຽກ ແລະ ທ່ອງທ່ຽວ | both work and travel |

RESPONSE DRILL: Respond to the question: *How much longer?* ອີກດົນປານໃດ?

ຖາມ: ເຈົ້າຊິເປັນທະຫານອີກດົນປານໃດ?

ຕອບ: ຂ້ອຍຊິເປັນທະຫານອີກ ໒໒ ປີ

ຖາມ: ເຈົ້າຊິຢູ່ບ້ານນອກອີກດົນປານໃດ?

ຕອບ: ຂ້ອຍຊິຢູ່ບ້ານນີ້ອີກ ໕ ປີ

ຖາມ: ເຈົ້າຊິຢູ່ຫຼວງພະບາງອີກດົນປານໃດ?

ຕອບ: ຂ້ອຍຊິຢູ່ຫຼວງພະບາງອີກ 5 ອາທິດ

ຖາມ: ອີກດົນປານໃດເຈົ້າຊິອອກລູກ?

ຕອບ: ຂ້ອຍຊິອອກລູກພາຍໃນ ໗ ມື້

ຖາມ: ທ່ານທູດຈະລົມກັບທະຫານອີກດົນປານໃດ?

ຕອບ: ທ່ານທູດຈະລົມນຳທະຫານອີກ ໗ ຊົ່ວໂມງ

ຖາມ: ນັກການທູດຊີຝັກອົບຮົມອີກດົນປານໃດ?

ຕອບ: ນັກການທູດຊີຝັກອົບຮົມອີກ ໂຂ່ ນາທີ

ຖາມ: ເຈົ້າຊີອາໄສຢູ່ກັບພໍ່ແມ່ອີກດົນປານໃດ?

ຕອບ: ຂ້ອຍຊີອາໄສຢູ່ກັບພໍ່ແມ່ອີກ 12 ປີ

ຖາມ: ເຈົ້າຊິຮຽນພາສາລາວອີກດົນປານໃດ?

ຕອບ: ຂ້ອຍຊິຮຽນພາສາລາວອີກ ໑ ເດືອນ

REPETITION DRILL: ຈົນຮອດ...until; ໜ້າ...next, future; ໂມງ...o'clock

ຈົນຮອດ ອາທິດໜ້າ

ຈົນຮອດ ເດືອນໜ້າ

ຈົນຮອດ ປີໜ້າ

ຈົນຮອດ ສາມມື້ໜ້າ

ຈົນຮອດ 2 ໂມງ

ຈົນຮອດ 7 ໂມງ

ຈົນຮອດ 11 ໂມງ

ຈົນຮອດ 8 ໂມງ

Complete the sentence.

1. ຂ້ອຍຊິຢູ່ກັບພໍ່ແມ່ຈົນຮອດ_____
2. ຂ້ອຍຊິຮຽນຈົນຮອດ_____
3. ນາຍຄູຊິສອນໜັງສືຈົນຮອດ_____
4. ທ່ານ ໂອບາມາ ຊິເປັນປະທານາທິບໍດີຈົນຮອດ_____

5. ທະຫານອາເມລິກາຊິຕີເສີກຢູ່ປະເທດອີຣັກຈົນຮອດ_____

DIALOGUE FOR LISTENING

| | |
|---|--|
| <p>ວັນດີ: ເຈົ້າ ເວົ້າພາສາລາວເກັ່ງອີ່ຫຼີ ເຈົ້າຮຽນມາຈາກໃສ?</p> <p>ຈອນ: ຂອບໃຈຫຼາຍໆ ຂ້ອຍຮຽນມາຈາກ ສະຖາບັນພາສາຕ່າງປະເທດຂອງ ກະຊວງການຕ່າງປະເທດ</p> <p>ວັນດີ: ເຈົ້າຮຽນດົນປານໃດ?</p> <p>ຈອນ: ປີໜຶ່ງ</p> <p>ວັນດີ: ເຈົ້າອ່ານ ແລະ ຊຽນ ໄດ້ບໍ່?</p> <p>ຈອນ: ພໍໄດ້ ແຕ່ບໍ່ເກັ່ງຫຼາຍ</p> <p>ວັນດີ: ເຈົ້າ ເປັນນັກການທູດ ດົນປານໃດແລ້ວ?</p> <p>ຈອນ: ໄດ້ ສິບປີແລ້ວ</p> <p>ວັນດີ: ເຈົ້າເຄີຍ(ໄດ້)ມາເມືອງລາວ ຈັກເທື່ອແລ້ວ?</p> <p>ຈອນ: ເທື່ອນີ້ ເປັນເທື່ອທຳອິດ</p> <p>ວັນດີ: ເຈົ້າຊຶ່ງນີ້ ອີກດົນປານໃດ?</p> <p>ຈອນ: ຂ້ອຍຊຶ່ງນີ້ ອີກເດືອນໜຶ່ງ ແລ້ວຊິໄປພາກໃຕ້</p> <p>ວັນດີ: ເຈົ້າຊິໄປເຮັດວຽກ ຫຼື ຫັດສະນາຈອນ?</p> <p>ຈອນ: ທັງສອງຢ່າງ ໄປເຮັດວຽກ ແລະ ໄປຫັດສະນາຈອນ</p> | <p>Vandy: You speak Lao very well. Where did you learn it from?</p> <p>John: Thank you. I studied at the State Department's Foreign Language Institute (FSI).</p> <p>Vandy: How long did you study?</p> <p>John: One year.</p> <p>Vandy: Can you read and write ?</p> <p>John: I can do some but not that well.</p> <p>Vandy: How long have you been a diplomat?</p> <p>John: Ten years.</p> <p>Vandy: How many times have you been here, in Laos?</p> <p>John: This is the first time.</p> <p>Vandy: How much longer will you be staying here?</p> <p>John: I'll stay here for one more month then I will go the South.</p> <p>Vandy: Are you going there to work or for fun (sightseeing)?</p> <p>John: Both, to work and for fun.</p> |
|---|--|

STRUCTURE APPLICATIONS AND CULTURAL NOTES

FRAME 1

1. ເກັ່ງ means *to be good at doing something*. It can be used as a main verb or a modifier. It has a few equivalents in English.

EXAMPLES

| | |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------|
| ລາວຄົວກິນເກັ່ງ | He is good at cooking (good cook). |
| ລາວເຕະບານເກັ່ງ | He is good at soccer (good player). |
| ລາວເປັນນັກຮຽນເກັ່ງ | He is a smart student (good student). |

ອີ່ຫຼີ...means *really, indeed*

3. ບໍ່ means *NO! Negative*

4. ພໍໄດ້ means *sufficiently*. Lao people respond to a question such as: *How well can you do a certain task?* By saying ພໍໄດ້ It is a modest way to indicate that you are not an expert on the subject, but you have sufficient knowledge to get the job done.

FRAME 2

1. ມາ...as a main verb means *to come; to be (somewhere)*. It normally precedes a place name or a word of location.

EXAMPLES

| | |
|--------------------------|---|
| ເຈົ້າມາໂຮງຮຽນແນວໃດ? | How did you <i>come</i> to school? |
| ແມ່ລາວໄດ້ມາປະເທດອະເມລິກາ | His mother <i>came to</i> America |
| ນັກຮຽນມາຈາກບ້ານ | The students <i>come</i> from their home. |

ມາ also functions as the preposition *to* in English.

EXAMPLES

| | |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| ນາຍຄູໄດ້ຂັບລົດມາໂຮງຮຽນ | The teacher drove <i>to</i> school. |
| ລາວຍ່າງມາໂຮງຮຽນ | He walks <i>to</i> school. |
| ເຈົ້າຂີ່ເຮືອບິນມາເມືອງລາວ | You fly <i>to</i> Laos. |
| ຂ້ອຍມາຈາກປະເທດອະເມລິກາ | I come from America. |

In addition, ມາ functions as present perfect or present perfect continuous tense indicator (*to have + past participle / to have been + verb + ing*).

EXAMPLES

| | |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| ລາວຢູ່ນີ້ ມາ(ໄດ້)ດົນປານໃດແລ້ວ? | How long <i>has he been</i> here? |
| ຜົວລາວຮຽນພາສາລາວ ມາ(ໄດ້)ສອງປີແລ້ວ | Her husband <i>has been studying</i> Lao for two years already. |
| ເຈົ້າເປັນທະຫານ ມາ(ໄດ້)ດົນປານໃດ? | How long <i>have you been</i> a soldier? |
| ພວກເຮົາຮຽນພາສາລາວ ມາ(ໄດ້)ສາມອາທິດແລ້ວ | We <i>have been studying</i> Lao for three weeks already. |

2. ເຄີຍ is an auxiliary verb and is used similar to the English verb phrase *to have ever*.
The negative form is ບໍ່ເຄີຍ *never*.

EXAMPLES

| | |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| ເຈົ້າເຄີຍ(ໄດ້)ກິນອາຫານລາວບໍ່? | Have you <i>ever</i> had Lao food? |
| ລາວບໍ່ເຄີຍ(ໄດ້)ກິນອາຫານລາວ | He <i>has never</i> had Lao food. |

To affirmatively and negatively respond to a question containing the auxiliary verb ເຄີຍ...

ບໍ່ເຄີຍ...follow the following patterns:

| | |
|-----------------------|---|
| Questions: | ເຈົ້າເຄີຍ(ໄດ້)ກິນອາຫານລາວບໍ່? Have you ever had (eaten) Lao food? |
| Affirmative response: | ເຄີຍ ຂ້ອຍເຄີຍ(ໄດ້)ກິນອາຫານລາວ Yes, I have had (eaten) Lao food |
| Negative response: | ບໍ່ ຂ້ອຍບໍ່ເຄີຍ(ໄດ້)ກິນອາຫານລາວ No, I've <i>never had</i> (eaten) Lao food |

FRAME 3

1. The word ຈົນຮອດ...means *until* and functions the same as in the English language.

EXAMPLES

| | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| ຂ້ອຍເຮັດວຽກຈົນຮອດອາທິດໜ້າ | I work until next week. |
| ລາວຊິຮຽນຈົນຮອດປີໜ້າ | He will study until next year. |
| ລາວຊິຮຽນຈົນຮອດອາທິດໜ້າ | He will study until next week. |
| ລາວຂັບລົດຈົນຮອດທະເລ | He drives until he got to the beach. |

2. ໜ້າ means *next...* and is used as a modifier with a unit of time that happens or will happen in the future. The following are the most commonly used combinations:

| | |
|----------|-----------------------|
| ອາທິດໜ້າ | next week |
| ເດືອນໜ້າ | next month |
| ປີໜ້າ | next year |
| ມື້ໜ້າ | next day, another day |

EXERCISE

A. Write the number of the Lao sentence in the space provided in front of the English translation that matches.

| | | | |
|-----|---|-----|--|
| 1. | ລາວເປັນຂ້າລັດຖະການກະຊວງການຕ່າງປະເທດ | () | How long have you been studying? |
| 2. | ໂຮງຮຽນສອນພາສາຕ່າງປະເທດຊື່ຫຍັງ? | () | This is the first time he has come to Laos. |
| 3. | ເຈົ້າຮຽນມາດົນປານໃດແລ້ວ? | () | Have you ever worked in Laos? |
| 4. | ເຈົ້າຈະບໍ່ໄປທົ່ວກັບຂ້ອຍບໍ? | () | How much longer will he be here? |
| 5. | ຂ້ອຍຈະຢູ່ບ່ອນນີ້ ຈົນຮອດປີໜ້າ | () | What is the name of the foreign language school? |
| 6. | ຄະນະພະນັກງານເຈົ້າ ແລະ ຄະນະພະນັກງານຂ້ອຍ ຈະໄປພາກໃຕ້ | () | He is an employee of the State Department . |
| 7. | ນີ້ເປັນເທື່ອທຳອິດທີ່ລາວມາເມືອງລາວ | () | I will stay here until next year. |
| 8. | ເຈົ້າເຄີຍ(ໄດ້)ເຮັດວຽກຢູ່ໃນເມືອງລາວບໍ? | () | He can read Lao quite well. |
| 9. | ລາວຊຶ່ງນີ້ອີກດົນປານໃດ? | () | Both of our units will be going to the south. |
| 10. | ລາວອ່ານພາສາລາວເກັ່ງອີ່ຫຼີ | () | Will you go out with me? |

B. Fill in the blank with one of the given Lao words.

| | | | | |
|------|--------|-----|-----|-------|
| ເຄີຍ | ຈົນຮອດ | ແຕ່ | ແທ້ | ປານໃດ |
|------|--------|-----|-----|-------|

1. ລາວເວົ້າພໍໄດ້ _____ ບໍ່ເກັ່ງປານໃດ?
2. ມື້ນີ້ ອາກາດດີ _____ ໆ
3. ລາວ _____ (ໄດ້)ເຮັດວຽກຢູ່ນີ້
4. ພວກເຮົາຮຽນ _____ (ໄດ້) ໒ ເດືອນແລ້ວ
5. ເຈົ້າຂັບລົດ _____ ລັດ ນິວຢອຣ໌ກ
6. ລາວເວົ້າກັບເຈົ້າດີນ _____ ?

C. Answer the following questions.

1. ເຈົ້າຮຽນພາສາລາວມາ(ໄດ້)ຈັກອາທິດແລ້ວ?

2. ເຈົ້າເຄີຍໄປເມືອງລາວບໍ?

3. ເຈົ້າເຄີຍ(ໄດ້)ໄປຕ່າງປະເທດຈັກເທື່ອແລ້ວ?

4. ປະເທດທຳອິດທີ່ເຈົ້າໄປຢ້ຽມຢາມແມ່ນປະເທດໃດ?

CONVERSATION EXERCISES (ROLE-PLAYS)

1. Discuss the information in *Dialogue for Listening*. The following questions must be included in the discussion.
 - Where did the person study Lao?
 - How long did he study?
 - How well can he read and write Lao?
 - How long has he been in the military?
 - How many times has he been to Laos?
 - How much longer will he be in Laos?
 - Why does he come to Laos?

2. Pair up students in the class and let them find out from each other *how long they*
 - have been in the service.
 - have been here.
 - have been studying the language.
 - have been married.

3. Let the students take turns asking each other
 - whether the other can speak any foreign languages.
 - where he studied the language.
 - how well he can speak the foreign language.
 - whether he can read and write the foreign language.
 - how well he can read and write the language.

4. The students will take turns interviewing each other asking *whether he/she has ever*
 - been to a foreign country.
 - worked in a foreign country.
 - been to Laos.
 - had Lao food.

5. Discuss each student's professional career including

- what state he/she received his/her first professional training.
- who was her/his first supervisor/company boss.
- where he /she has been traveled to.
- how long he/she has been with that company.
- how much longer he/she will be working in that company.

6. Role-play.

A Lao who meets an American is surprised to see that he/she can speak Lao very well. The conversation should include the complimentary remark on how well he/she can speak Lao. Also find out the following:

- where he/she learned Lao.
- whether he/she can read and write Lao.
- who taught him/her.
- how long he/she studied the language.

VOCABULARY

| | |
|-------------------------|---|
| 1. ເກັ່ງ, ສະຫຼາດ | to be good at; skillful; smart; clever |
| 2. ອີ່ຫຼີ | really, indeed |
| 3. ພາສາຕ່າງປະເທດ | foreign language |
| 4. ໂຮງຮຽນພາສາຕ່າງປະເທດ | Foreign Language School |
| 5. ກະຊວງການຕ່າງປະເທດ | State Department |
| 6. ດົນ | long (time) |
| 7. ດົນປານໃດ? | how long? (time) |
| 8. ອ່ານ | to read |
| 9. ຊຽນ | to write |
| 10. ບໍ່, ບໍ່.....ປານໃດ? | not very, not really... |
| 11. ມາ | to come, to have been somewhere and come back |

- | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 12. ເຄີຍ | to have ever...; used to; ever |
| 13. ເທື່ອ, ຄັ້ງ, ເປັນທີ | time(s) |
| 14. ຈັກເທື່ອ | How many times? |
| 15. ທຳອິດ | first |
| 16. ເທື່ອທຳອິດ | first time |
| 17. ຫຼິ້ນເຕນນິສ | to play tennis |
| 18. ອີກດົນປານໃດ? | how much longer? |
| 19. ຈົນຮອດ | until |
| 20. ອາທິດໜ້າ | next week |
| 21. ເດືອນໜ້າ | next month |
| 22. ປີໜ້າ | next year |
| 23. ມື້ນີ້ | today |
| 24. ມື້ອື່ນ | tomorrow |
| 25. ສະຖາບັນ | institute; institution |

LESSON QUIZ

A. Write the number of English response that matches the Lao sentence in the space provided.

| | | |
|---|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| — | ໑. ເຈົ້າເວົ້າພາສາລາວເກັ່ງອີ່ຫຼີ | 1. Central, northeast, and south. |
| — | ໒. ເຈົ້າຮຽນພາສາລາວມາຈາກໃສ? | 2. I can read only. |
| — | ໓. ເຈົ້າອ່ານ ແລະ ຊຽນພາສາລາວໄດ້ບໍ່? | 3. 1 year. |
| — | ໔. ເຈົ້າຮຽນພາສາລາວດົນປານໃດແລ້ວ? | 4. Thank you. I'm trying. |
| — | ໕. ນາຍຄູເຈົ້າມາຈາກພາກໃດ? | 5. FSI |

B. Answer the following questions in Lao.

1. ເຈົ້າເປັນທະຫານມາ(ໄດ້)ດົນປານໃດແລ້ວ?

2. ເຈົ້າຮຽນພາສາລາວມາຈາກໃສ ແລະ ຮຽນດົນປານໃດ?

3. ເຈົ້າເຄີຍ(ໄດ້)ຮຽນພາສາຫຍັງແດ່ ແລະ ຮຽນມາຈາກໃສ?





4. ຜົວເຈົ້າ / ເມຍເຈົ້າ ຄົວກິນເກັ່ງບໍ່?

5. ເຈົ້າໄປຢ້ຽມຢາມເມືອງລາວເປັນຄັ້ງທຳອິດນັ້ນ ແມ່ນປີໃດ ແລະ ດົນປານໃດ?

 ການຊື້ເຄື່ອງຂອງ
(Shopping)

OBJECTIVES

Upon completion of this lesson, you will be able to:

-  ask for prices
-  negotiate prices
-  indicate the desired type, color, size, and quantity of merchandise
-  ask someone to buy something.





COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGE: FRAME 1

| | |
|---|--|
| <p>ເດວິດ: ເສື້ອຜົນລະເທົ່າໃດ?</p> <p>ຄົນຂາຍ: ຜົນລະ 2 ແສນກີບ</p> <p>ເດວິດ: ແພງໂພດ 1 ແສນ 50 ພັນ ໄດ້ບໍ່?</p> <p>ຄົນຂາຍ: ເອີໄດ້ ເອົາຊະ ເຈົ້າຊິເອົາຈັກໂຕ?</p> <p>ເດວິດ: ຂ້ອຍຊື້ຊື້ 2 ໂຕ ສີຂາວ ແລະ ສີແດງ</p> <p>ຄົນຂາຍ: ເສື້ອ 2 ຜົນທັງໝົດ ສາມແສນກີບ</p> <p>ເດວິດ: ນີ້ ສາມແສນກີບ ຂອບໃຈເດີ້</p> <p>ຄົນຂາຍ: ເອີ ໂຊກດີ</p> | <p>David: How much is a shirt?</p> <p>Seller: 200,000 Kips each</p> <p>David: That's expensive. Can you make it 150,000?</p> <p>Seller: Sure; yeah! Take it! How many do you want?</p> <p>David: I'll take 2, one white and one red.</p> <p>Seller: 2 shirts total 300,000 Kips</p> <p>David: Here is 300,000 Kips, thanks</p> <p>Seller: Good luck!</p> |
|---|--|

VOCABULARY

| | |
|--------------------|--|
| ເອີ | informal yes; It is similar to English “ yeah...yeah” ...It is not polite as ໂດຍ or ເຈົ້າ |
| ຄົນຂາຍ | seller, vendor |
| ເສື້ອ | shirt, blouse |
| ຜືນ / ໂຕ | classifier for shirts, pants |
| ລະ | per, each |
| ເທົ່າໃດ / ທໍ່ໃດ? | how much? |
| ແພງ | expensive |
| ສິນຄ້າ | merchandise; goods |
| ຖືກ | cheap; inexpensive |
| ໂພດ | too |
| ແພງໂພດ | too expensive |
| ...ໄດ້ບໍ? | Can you make it . . .? |
| ໄດ້, ເອົາຊະ | let's make it . . .ending particle indicating acceptance or relenting to a certain request |
| ເອົາຊະ | to take; to accept; to get; go ahead take it... |
| ນ້ອຍ | small |
| ໃຫຍ່ | big |
| ສີ | color |
| ສີຂາວ | white |
| ສີດຳ | black |
| ສີຂຽວ | green |
| ສີແດງ | red |
| ສີໝາກກ້ຽງ / ສີສົ້ມ | orange |
| ສີຟ້າ | blue |
| ສີເຫຼືອງ | yellow |
| ສີນ້ຳຕານ | brown |

SUPPLEMENTAL VOCABULARY

| | |
|--------|-------|
| ຄົນຊື້ | buyer |
|--------|-------|

| | |
|---------|--------------------------------------|
| ລູກຄ້າ | customer; client |
| ໂສ້ງ | pants |
| ສິ້ນ | Lao tube skirt |
| ໄກ່ | chicken |
| ປາ | fish |
| ໝາກໄມ້ | fruit |
| ຜັກ | vegetable |
| ລາຄາ | cost; price |
| ຄ່າ | value; expense; cost of service; fee |
| ຊີ້ນງົວ | beef |
| ຊີ້ນໝູ | pork |
| ໄຂ່ | egg□□□□□□ |

TONE DRILLS

VOWEL AND TONE DRILL

| | | | | | | |
|------|------|-------|------|-------|------|------|
| ເຮືອ | ເສືອ | ເສື້ອ | ເບືອ | ເຫຼືອ | ເຊືອ | ເກືອ |
| ຫົວ | ຜົວ | ຕົວ | ຫົ່ວ | ປົວ | ມົວ | ຊົ່ວ |

| | |
|-----|-----|
| ສາມ | ອອກ |
|-----|-----|

ຕາມ ປອກ
 ຫ້າມ ບອກ
 ຊາມ ຈອກ

DIFFERENT TONES IN PHRASES

1. ລົດສີພໍ້າ
2. 30 ພັນໄດ້ບໍ່?
3. ເດືອນລະເທົ່າໃດ?
4. ໂຕະສີດໍາແພງບໍ່?
5. ເຈົ້າຊື້ເງິນໂດລາບໍ່?

PRACTICE

1. Asking for a price by using a classifier + each + ເທົ່າໃດ? / ຫໍ່ໃດ?

| | | |
|----------|------|----------------|
| ເສື້ອ | ໂຕລະ | ເທົ່າໃດ/ຫໍ່ໃດ? |
| ໂລ້ງ | ↓ | ↓ |
| ໄກ່ | ↓ | ↓ |
| ປາ | ↓ | ↓ |
| ກະໂປ່ງ | ↓ | ↓ |
| ເສື້ອຍືດ | ↓ | ↓ |
| ເສື້ອໜາວ | ↓ | ↓ |

2. Responding to the questions: classifier + each ລະ...+ how much?...ທໍ່ໃດ?

ຖາມ: ເສື້ອຜົນລະເທົ່າໃດ

ຕອບ: ຜົນລະ 20 ໂດລາ

ຖາມ: ລົດຄັນລະເທົ່າໃດ

ຕອບ: ຄັນລະ 20 ພັນໂດລາ

ຖາມ: ໄກ່ໂຕລະເທົ່າໃດ

ຕອບ: ໂຕລະ 40.000 ກີບ

ຖາມ: ຊິ້ນໝູກິໂລລະເທົ່າໃດ

ຕອບ: ກິໂລລະ 40.000 ກີບ

3. Bargaining the price by using ...ໄດ້ບໍ່? *Can you make it . . . ?*

| ສອງຮ້ອຍກີບ | ໄດ້ບໍ່? |
|------------|---------|
| ສອງແສນກີບ | ↓ |
| ໜຶ່ນກີບ | ↓ |
| ແປດແສນກີບ | ↓ |
| ລ້ານຫົກແສນ | ↓ |
| ເກົ້າໜຶ່ນ | ↓ |

4. Indicating the quantity desired.

ຂ້ອຍເອົາເສື້ອສອງໂຕ/ຜົນ

ລາວເອົາປາສາມໂຕ

ອ້າຍຂ້ອຍເອົາໄກ່ຫົກໂຕ

ເມຍຂ້ອຍເອົາກະໂປ່ງຜົນໜຶ່ງ*

ຂ້ອຍເອົາເສື້ອໜາວສອງໂຕ

5. Indicating the color desired.

ຂ້ອຍເອົາເສື້ອສີແດງ

ຂ້ອຍເອົາລົດສີຂາວ

ຂ້ອຍເອົາໂທລະສັບສີຂຽວ

ຂ້ອຍເອົາເກີບສີນ້ຳຕານ

ຂ້ອຍເອົາໝວກສີດຳ

ຂ້ອຍເອົາໂສ້ງສີໝາກກຽງ

ຂ້ອຍເອົາແວ່ນຕາສີຟ້າ

COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGE: FRAME 2

| | |
|--|---|
| <p>ຈູລີ: ປ້າ ຊື້ນກິໂລລະເທົ່າໃດ?</p> <p>ປ້າຂາຍເຄື່ອງ: ກິໂລລະ ແປດພັນກີບ</p> <p>ຈູລີ: ເອີ ໝາກກ້ວຍເດ ເຈົ້າຂາຍຈັ່ງໃດ?</p> <p>ປ້າຂາຍເຄື່ອງ: ຂາຍເປັນຫວີງລະ ສອງພັນກີບ</p> <p>ຈູລີ: ຂ້ອຍເອົາຊີ້ນ ສອງກິໂລ ແລະ ໝາກກ້ວຍ ສາມຫວີ ທັງໝົດເທົ່າໃດ?</p> <p>ປ້າຂາຍເຄື່ອງ: ຊີ້ນສອງກິໂລ ແລະ ໝາກກ້ວຍ ສາມຫວີ ທັງໝົດ ຊາວສອງພັນກີບ</p> <p>ຈູລີ: ເອົາເງິນ ໃບສິບພັນສອງໃບ ກັບໃບສອງພັນ ທັງໝົດ ຊາວສອງພັນກີບ ຂອບໃຈເດີປ້າ!</p> <p>ປ້າຂາຍເຄື່ອງ: ບໍ່ເປັນຫຍັງ ເທືອໜ້າມາອຸດ ໝູນອີກແດ່ເດີ!</p> | <p>Julie: Aunt, how much is a kilogram of beef?</p> <p>Seller/vendor: 8,000 Kips per kilogram.</p> <p>Julie: Okay, how about the bananas how do you sell them?</p> <p>Seller/vendor: Sold as a bunch, each 2,000 Kips</p> <p>Julie: I'll take 2 kilograms of meat and 3 bunches of bananas. What's the total?</p> <p>Seller/vendor: 2 kilograms of meat and 3 bunches of bananas total 22,000 Kips.</p> <p>Julie: Here's the money, two 10,000 Kips bills and a 2,000 Kips bills altogether 22,000 Kips. Thank you, aunt.</p> <p>Seller/vendor: It's nothing, next time come and support/help me out again, okay!</p> |
|--|---|

VOCABULARY

| | |
|--------------------|--|
| ໝາກກ້ວຍ | bananas |
| ຂາຍ | to sell |
| ຂາຍເປັນ | sell as / sold as |
| ຈັ່ງໃດ? | how |
| ຂາຍຈັ່ງໃດ? | How do you sell it? How is it sold? |
| ຫວີ | classifier for a bunch of bananas |
| ລວມທັງໝົດ / ທັງໝົດ | altogether |
| ທອນເງິນ | (v) to give a change back (money) |
| ເງິນທອນ | (n) change |
| ປ້າ | aunt; this term is used to address an older lady who is not related to you, but to show respect regardless of the social status. |
| ອີກ | again; anew; once again |
| ຂາຍເຄື່ອງ | sell stuff, things, merchandise |
| ເດີ? | what about?...and...? |
| ສອງໃບ | 2 bills |
| ເທື່ອໜ້າ | next time |
| ອຸດໜູນ | to support or patronize (a business) |
| ຂ້ອຍເອົາ | I'll take or I'll buy |
| ຂ້ອຍຂໍ | This is a more polite way to ask someone to do something. It is a request for someone to do something even if you're paying for a certain item or service. It is more polite than I'll take this....or I'll buy that. It's similar to, can I have? Or could you please...? |

SUPPLEMENTAL VOCABULARY

| | |
|---------|--|
| ໜ່ວຍ | classifier for roundish fruits, furniture, balls |
| ໝາກມ່ວງ | mango |
| ໝາກນາວ | lemon / lime |
| ໝາກມື້ | jackfruit |
| ໝາກຂາມ | tamarind |

| | |
|------------|------------|
| ໝາກຖົ່ວລຽນ | durian |
| ໝາກກ້ຽງ | orange |
| ໝາກກ້ວຍ | banana |
| ໝາກແຕງໂມ | watermelon |

SOUND DRILLS

| | | | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|------|------|------|------|
| ປາຍ | ສາຍ | ຂາຍ | ອາຍ | ອ້າຍ | ງ່າຍ | ຫ້າຍ |
| ໄປ | ໃສ | ໄຂ | ໄອ | ສາມ | ຕາມ | ຖາມ |
| ຂັງ | ປັງ | ສັງ | ຫຍັງ | ຍັງ | ຫຼັງ | ຊັງ |

VOWEL DRILL

| | |
|----|-----|
| ເ- | ແ- |
| ເພ | ແພ |
| ເຊ | ແນ |
| ເປ | ແກ່ |

TONE DRILL:

ແຕກເງິນໄດ້ບໍ່?

ໝາກກ້ວຍ ແພງໂພດ

ເສື້ອສີແດງ ງາມຫຼາຍ

ໝາກກ້ຽງ ຫົກໜ່ວຍ

ມີນີ້ ຊື້ນ ແລະ ປາ ຂາຍດີ

PRACTICE

Asking and responding to the questions with - ...ຂາຍຈັ່ງໃດ?*How do you sell it . . . ?*
Sell as.....Sold as.....

ຖາມ: ສົ້ມໝູຂາຍຈັ່ງໃດ?

How do you sell your sour pork?

ຕອບ: ສົ້ມໝູຂາຍເປັນຫໍ່ / ມັດ

It is sold as a unit(classifier)

ຖາມ: ໝາກມ່ວງຂາຍຈັ່ງໃດ?

ຕອບ: ໝາກມ່ວງຂາຍເປັນກິໂລ

ຖາມ: ໝາກໂມຂາຍຈັ່ງໃດ?

ຕອບ: ໝາກໂມຂາຍເປັນໜ່ວຍ

ຖາມ: ໝາກຖົ່ວລຽນຂາຍຈັ່ງໃດ?

ຕອບ: ໝາກຖົ່ວລຽນຂາຍເປັນໜ່ວຍ

ຖາມ: ຊີ້ນງົວຂາຍຈັ່ງໃດ?

ຕອບ: ຊີ້ນງົວຂາຍເປັນກິໂລ

ຖາມ: ປາຂາຍຈັ່ງໃດ?

ຕອບ: ປາຂາຍເປັນໂຕ

COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGE: FRAME 3

| | |
|--|---|
| <p>ແສງເດືອນ: ເຈົ້າຊິໄປໃສ?</p> <p>ທອມມີ: ຂ້ອຍຊິໄປຕະຫຼາດ ເຈົ້າຊິເອົາຫຍັງບໍ?</p> <p>ແສງເດືອນ: ເອົາ! ຂ້ອຍຫາໃຫ້ເຈົ້າຊື້ກະປູໃຫ້ຂ້ອຍໄດ້ບໍ?</p> <p>ທອມມີ: ໄດ້! ເຈົ້າຊິເອົາໂຕໃຫຍ່ ຫຼື ໂຕນ້ອຍ?</p> <p>ແສງເດືອນ: ເອົາໂຕຂະໜາດກາງ ບໍ່ໃຫຍ່ ບໍ່ນ້ອຍ ເອົາສາມໂຫຼ.</p> | <p>Sengdeuan: Where are you going?</p> <p>Tommy: To the market. Do you need anything?</p> <p>Sengdeuan: Could you buy me some crabs?</p> <p>Tommy: Sure. Do you want the large or small crabs?</p> <p>Sengdeuan: The medium size ones, not too small and not too big for 3 dozens.</p> |
|--|---|

VOCABULARY

| | |
|-----------------------|--|
| ໄປ | to go, go |
| ໃສ | Where? |
| ໄປໃສ? | Going somewhere? Where are you going? |
| ຕະຫຼາດ | market |
| ເອົາ | to take, to bring; with verb of motion ເອົາໄປ ຫຼື ເອົາມາ |
| ຢາກ | to want |
| ແມ່ນຫຍັງ? | What is it? |
| ໄດ້ | to get |
| ຢາກໄດ້ | want (something) |
| ຫາ | to ask or to request someone to do you a favor |
| ຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອ / ຊ່ວຍເຫຼືອ | to help, to assist |
| ຊື້ | to buy, to purchase |
| ຂາຍ | to sell |
| ໃຫ້ | to give, to grant |

| | |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| ທີ່ສຸດ | the most, the -est |
| ແນວ, ແບບ, ຢ່າງ, ສະນິດ | sort, type, kind, style |
| ຂະໜາດ | size, dimension |
| ໃຫຍ່ | big, large, vast, oversize |
| ນ້ອຍ | small |
| ໂຫຼ | dozen |
| ຂະໜາດກາງ | medium size |
| ກາງ | medium, middle |

SUPPLEMENTAL VOCABULARY

| | |
|-------------|------------------------|
| ຄ້ອນຕີ | hammer |
| ໝາກໄມ້ | fruits |
| ອັນ | classifier for objects |
| ເຄື່ອງອາໄລ່ | parts |
| ເຄື່ອງມື | tools |
| ໜາ | thick |
| ບາງ | thin |
| ງາມ | pretty |
| ດີ | good |
| ຜຸດ / ຝີດ | foot; feet |
| ຊັງຕີແມດ | centimeter |
| ແມດ | meter |
| ຫຼາ | yard |
| ໂຕນ | ton |
| ນິ້ວ | inch |

SOUND DRILLS

VOWEL AND TONE DRILL

| | | | | | | |
|-----|----|-----|-----|----|----|-----|
| ຊື່ | ມີ | ມີ້ | ເອ້ | ຖີ | ຮີ | ຫຼີ |
|-----|----|-----|-----|----|----|-----|

TONE DRILL

DIFFERENT TONES IN PHRASES

1. ມີເອື້ອຍຈັກຄົນ?
2. ຕໍາຫຼວດຈັບຄົນ
3. ກະເປົາຂອງແມ່
4. ແຕ່ງງານແລ້ວຫຼີຍັງ?
5. ອາຍຸບໍ່ຫຼາຍປານໃດ?

PRACTICE

1. Requesting someone to do something.

Requesting someone to do something = ຊ່ອຍ...ໃຫ້ຂ້ອຍແດ່...ໄດ້ບໍ່?

Could you help...for me?

ຊ່ອຍຊື້ ກະບູ ໃຫ້ຂ້ອຍແດ່ ໄດ້ບໍ່?

ຊ່ອຍຊື້ ໝາກກ້ວຍ ໃຫ້ຂ້ອຍແດ່ ໄດ້ບໍ່?

ຊ່ອຍຊື້ ຊີ້ນ ໃຫ້ຂ້ອຍແດ່ ໄດ້ບໍ່?

ຊ່ອຍຊື້ ເສື້ອ ໃຫ້ຂ້ອຍແດ່ ໄດ້ບໍ່?

ຊ່ອຍຊື້ ປາ ໃຫ້ຂ້ອຍແດ່ ໄດ້ບໍ່?

ຊ່ອຍຊື້ ໄກ່ໃຫ້ຂ້ອຍແດ່ ໄດ້ບໍ່?

1.2. Asking someone for help = ຊ່ອຍ...ແດ່ໄດ້ບໍ່?: *Could you help?*

ຊ່ອຍ ຂ້ອຍແດ່ ໄດ້ບໍ່?

ຊ່ອຍ ລາວແດ່ ໄດ້ບໍ່?

ຊ່ອຍ ປ້າແດ່ ໄດ້ບໍ່?

ຊ່ອຍ ພໍ່ແດ່ ໄດ້ບໍ່?

ຊ່ອຍ ແມ່ແດ່ ໄດ້ບໍ່?

ຊ່ອຍ ຄູບາແດ່ ໄດ້ບໍ່?

1.3 Asking for specification (which size, sort, type, kind and which one is wanted)

ເອົາອັນໃດ?

ເອົາແນວໃດ?

ເອົາຂະໜາດໃດ?

ເອົາແບບໃດ?

ເອົາໜ່ວຍໃດ

ເອົາໂຕໃດ?

ເອົາຄັນໃດ?

2. Specifying with ນີ້...*this*.....ອັນນີ້.....*this one*. ນັ້ນ *that*...ອັນນັ້ນ.....*that one*

2.1

ຖາມ: ເອົາແນວໃດ?

ຕອບ: ເອົາແນວນີ້

ຖາມ: ເອົາແບບໃດ?

ຕອບ: ເອົາແບບນັ້ນ

ຖາມ: ເອົາຂະໜາດໃດ?

ຕອບ: ເອົາຂະໜາດນ້ອຍ

ຖາມ: ເອົາອັນໃດ?

ຕອບ: ເອົາອັນນີ້

ຖາມ: ເອົາອັນໃດ?

ຕອບ: ເອົາອັນນັ້ນ

ຖາມ: ເອົາໂຕໃດ?

ຕອບ: ເອົາໂຕໃຫຍ່

3. Indicating the type, size, and quantity desired.

ຖາມ: ເອົາຊະນິດໃດ?

ຕອບ: ເອົາຊະນິດນີ້

ຖາມ: ເອົາແບບໃດ?

ຕອບ: ເອົາແບບນັ້ນ

ຖາມ: ເອົາຂະໜາດໃດ?

ຕອບ: ເອົາຂະໜາດກາງ

ຖາມ: ເອົາໂຕໃດ?

ຕອບ: ເອົາໂຕໃຫຍ່ ແລະ ກາງ

ຖາມ: ເອົາຈັກກິໂລ?

ຕອບ: ເອົາແປດກິໂລ

ຖາມ: ເອົາຈັກໜ່ວຍ?

ຕອບ: ເອົາ ສາມໜ່ວຍ

4. Specifying the type, size, and quantity in the superlative. ທີ່ສຸດ superlative, means the most.

ຖາມ: ເອົາ ແບບ ໃດ? ແນວ ໃດ? ຢ່າງໃດ?

ຕອບ: ເອົາແບບໃຫຍ່ທີ່ສຸດ

ຕອບ: ເອົາແນວນ້ອຍທີ່ສຸດ

ຕອບ: ເອົາຢ່າງງາມທີ່ສຸດ

ຕອບ: ເອົາແນວດີທີ່ສຸດ

ຕອບ: ເອົາແບບແພງທີ່ສຸດ

ຕອບ: ເອົາຢ່າງຖືກທີ່ສຸດ

5. Asking and answering the specific type or size in inches, centimeters, meters, etc.

ຖາມ: ເອົາ ຍາວ ຂະໜາດໃດ?

ຕອບ: ເອົາ 5 ແມດ

ຕອບ: ເອົາ ເຄິ່ງຫຼາ

ຕອບ: ເອົາ 3 ນິ້ວ

ຕອບ: ເອົາ 29 ຊັງຕີແມດ

6. Indicating specific type and quantity desired. ເອົາຈັກ + classifier or adverb sort, type and kind.

ຖາມ: ເອົາ ແບບໃດ?

ຕອບ: ເອົາ ແບບໃໝ່

ຖາມ: ເອົາ ຂະໜາດໃດ?

ຕອບ: ເອົາ ຂະໜາດໃຫຍ່

ຖາມ: ເອົາສີໃດ?

ຕອບ: ເອົາສີຟ້າ ແລະ ສີນ້ຳຕານ

ຖາມ: ເອົາຈັກໂຕ?

ຕອບ: ເອົາສິບໂຕ

ຖາມ: ເອົາຈັກຄັນ?

ຕອບ: ເອົາສາມຄັນ

ຖາມ: ເອົາຈັກຜືນ?

ຕອບ: ເອົາເກົ້າຜືນ

DIALOGUE FOR LISTENING A

| | |
|--|---|
| <p>ເດວິດ: ຊິໄປໃສ?</p> <p>ຈຳປາ: ຊິໄປຕະຫຼາດ ເອົາຫຍັງບໍ?</p> <p>ເດວິດ: ເອີ ຂ້ອຍຫາເຈົ້າຊີ້ ກະປູ ໃຫ້ແດ່ໄດ້ບໍ?</p> <p>ຈຳປາ: ໄດ້ ຊິເອົາຊະນິດໃດ?</p> <p>ເດວິດ: ເອົາຊະນິດນ້ອຍທີ່ສຸດ ເອົາເຄິ່ງກິໂລເດີ້</p> <p>ຈຳປາ: ໄດ້ ເອົາຫຍັງອີກ?</p> <p>ເດວິດ: ເອີ ຂ້ອຍຫາເຈົ້າຊີ້ໝາກມ່ວງໃຫ້ແດ່. ເຂົາເຈົ້າຂາຍຈັ່ງໃດ?</p> <p>ຈຳປາ: ເຂົາເຈົ້າຂາຍເປັນກິໂລ</p> <p>ເດວິດ: ກິໂລລະເທົ່າໃດ?</p> <p>ຈຳປາ: ກິໂລລະ 30.000 ກີບ</p> <p>ເດວິດ: ແພງຫຼາຍ/ ແພງໂພດ!!</p> <p>ຈຳປາ: ມັນແພງ ເພາະວ່າ ມັນເກືອບໝົດລະດູແລ້ວ</p> <p>ເດວິດ: ບໍ່ເປັນຫຍັງ ເອົາໃຫ້ຂ້ອຍ 3 ກິໂລແດ່. ນີ້ເງິນ ຂອບໃຈເດີ້!</p> <p>ຈຳປາ: ລາກ່ອນ / ໄປກ່ອນເດີ້ (ພໍ້ກັນໃໝ່)</p> | <p>David: Going somewhere?</p> <p>Champa: The market. Want something?</p> <p>David: Yes, can you get me some crabs?</p> <p>Champa: Sure. What type?</p> <p>David: The smallest ones. Can you get me half a kilogram?</p> <p>Champa: Sure. Anything else?</p> <p>David: Yes, can you get me some mangoes also. How do they sell them?</p> <p>Champa: They sell in kilograms.</p> <p>David: How much per kilogram?</p> <p>Champa: 30,000 Kips per kilogram.</p> <p>David: Too/Very expensive!!!</p> <p>Champa: It's expensive, because it's almost the end of the season already.</p> <p>David: It's alright/it's okay. Go ahead and get me 3 kilograms. Here's the money and thanks.</p> <p>Champa: I'm leaving. (See you later; See you again.)</p> |
|--|---|

SUPPLEMENTAL VOCABULARY

| | |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------|
| ເອົາຫຍັງບໍ? ຢາກໄດ້ຫຍັງບໍ? | Need anything? Want anything? |
| ໂພດ / ເກີນໄປ | too |
| ຫຼາຍ | very; a lot |
| ເພາະວ່າ | because |
| ມັນ | it |
| ລະດູ | season |
| ເກືອບ | almost; nearly |

| | |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------|
| ໝົດ | to end; all; whole; deplete |
| ນີ້...ເງິນ | here is the money |
| ໂລດ | at once; immediately; right away |
| ມັນແພງ | it's expensive |
| ຂາຍເປັນ | sold as...sell as |
| ນ້ອຍທີ່ສຸດ | the smallest |
| ເຄິ່ງກິໂລ | half a kilogram |
| ເອົາໃຫ້ຂ້ອຍ | give me... |
| ກິໂລລະ | per kilogram |
| ໝາກມວ່ງ (ໜ່ວຍ) | mango (classifier) |
| ກະປູ | crabs |
| ເຂົາເຈົ້າ | they (them) |
| ທ່າໃດ? ເທົ່າໃດ? | How much? |
| ຊະນິດໃດ? | What kind? |
| ຊິໄປໃສ? | Going where? Where are you going? |

DIALOGUE FOR LISTENING B

| | |
|---|---|
| <p>ແຫວນດີ: ລົດຄັນນີ້ ລາຄາເທົ່າໃດ?</p> <p>ຄົນຂາຍລົດ: 37,000 ໂດລາ</p> <p>ແຫວນດີ: ແພງໂພດ 30,000 ໂດລາ ໄດ້ບໍ່?</p> <p>ຄົນຂາຍລົດ: ບໍ່ໄດ້ ລົດນີ້ ອອກມາປີນີ້</p> <p>ແຫວນດີ: 35,000 ໂດລາ ໄດ້ບໍ່?</p> <p>ຄົນຂາຍລົດ: ເອີ ເອົາຊະ ເຈົ້າຢາກໄດ້ສີໃດ?</p> <p>ແຫວນດີ: ຂ້ອຍຢາກໄດ້ ສີຟ້າ ຫຼື ສີຂຽວ</p> <p>ຄົນຂາຍລົດ: ຂ້ອຍມີ ສີຟ້າ</p> <p>ແຫວນດີ: ຂ້ອຍຊື້ເອົາ ຄັນນັ້ນ</p> <p>ຄົນຂາຍລົດ: ດີຫຼາຍ. ເຈົ້າຊື້ຈ່າຍເງິນສົດ ຫຼື ເງິນຜ່ອນ?</p> <p>ແຫວນດີ: ຂ້ອຍຊື້ຈ່າຍເງິນສົດໝົດ</p> <p>ຄົນຂາຍລົດ: ຂອບໃຈຫຼາຍໆ</p> | <p>Wendy: How much is this car?</p> <p>Seller: \$37,000.</p> <p>Wendy: Too expensive! Can you make it \$30,000?</p> <p>Seller: I can't this car came out this year.</p> <p>Wendy: Will you take \$35,000?</p> <p>Seller: Sure. Yes, okay, I take it!! Which color do you want?</p> <p>Wendy: I want a blue one or a green one.</p> <p>Seller: I have a blue one.</p> <p>Wendy: I'll take that one.</p> <p>Seller: Very good! Are you paying in cash or in installments?</p> <p>Wendy: I'm paying all in cash.</p> <p>Seller: Thank you very much.</p> |
|---|---|

SUPPLEMENTAL VOCABULARY

| | |
|-------------|--|
| ລາຄາ | cost |
| ລົດ | car |
| ຄັນ | classifier for cars; motorcycle; vehicles |
| ປີນີ້ | this year |
| ເຈົ້າຢາກໄດ້ | you want |
| ແພງ | expensive; costly |
| ອອກມາປີນີ້ | came out this year |
| ເອີ | casual yes in Lao; yeah; sure, not as polite as ໂດຍ or ເຈົ້າ |
| ສີໃດ? | Which color? |
| ຂ້ອຍມີ | I have |

| | |
|----------------|---------------------------|
| ທໍ່ໃດ?ເທົ່າໃດ? | How much? |
| ຫຼື | or |
| ຊື້ຈ່າຍ | will pay |
| ສີຟ້າ | blue |
| ເງິນຜ່ອນ | pay in installments |
| ສີຂຽວ | green |
| ເງິນສົດ | cash |
| ຂ້ອຍຊື້ເອົາ | I'll take |
| ຈ່າຍ | to pay |
| ຈ່າຍໝົດແລ້ວ | all paid off |
| ຄັນນັ້ນ | that vehicle (classifier) |

EXERCISE

1. Discuss the content of the *Dialogue for Listening A*.

ຊິໄປໃສ?

ເອົາຫຍັງອີກ?

2. Discuss the content of the *Dialogue for Listening B*.

ຊື້ລົດຄັນໃດ?

ເຈົ້າຊື້ຈ່າຍຈັ່ງໃດ?

ແພງ ຫຼື ບໍ່ແພງ?

3. You want to find out the price of the pants, so you ask in Lao:
-

4. The quoted price for the pants is 30,000 Kips. You want to bargain down to 25,000 kips, so you say:

5. You wonder how bananas are sold, so you ask:

ACTIVITY

1. Role-play:

1.1 Buy fruits at a local market in Laos.

1.2 Negotiate the prices of clothing (pants, shirts, skirts, and so on), then specify the size and color that you want.

2. Tell the class about your favorite color. Also tell what color is your car, shirt, pants, etc... that you like the most.

3. Follow the Communicative Exchange Frame 3 dialogue, but ask your friend to buy something else for you.

4. You just got back from a shopping spree. Tell the class what you bought, how many, the prices, and if applicable, what color and size.

5. Tell a vendor if he/she will take 80,000 kips for the shirt.

6. Ask a vendor how much for 2 kilos of beef.

7. Ask if a vendor, if he/she has a black one. (Pants)



8. How much for the red one? (Car)

9. Tell the salesman that you're paying cash for the car.
10. Ask the vendor, if they will take 90,000 Kips.
11. Ask a classmate to get you some bananas.
12. Ask a butcher how the beef is sold.
13. Tell vendor that you will take two chickens.
14. Ask a vendor about the price of the red cell phone.

 ການສັ່ງອາຫານ
(Ordering Food)

OBJECTIVES

Upon completion of this lesson, you will be able to:

-  order at least ten dishes and beverages
-  ask for a bill

COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGE: FRAME 1

| | |
|---|---|
| <p>ຄົນເສີບ: ທ່ານຊື້ສິ່ງຫຍັງ? ແຊຣາ: ຂ້ອຍຢາກສັ່ງລາບ ຈີນປາ ແລະ ແກງໄກ່ ຄົນເສີບ: ແລ້ວທ່ານເດ? ພິເຕີ: ຂ້ອຍຢາກສັ່ງປັ້ງໄກ່-ຕຳໝາກຫຸ່ງ-ກັບເຂົ້າໜຽວ ຄົນເສີບ: ທ່ານຢາກສັ່ງເຄື່ອງດື່ມບໍ? ແຊຣາ: ຂ້ອຍຊື້ເອົານ້ຳໝາກໄມ້ສົດ ກັບນ້ຳລ້າງ ພິເຕີ: ຂ້ອຍຊື້ເອົາເບຍລາວສອງແກ້ວ ຄົນເສີບ: ຕຳໝາກຫຸ່ງເຜັດບໍ? ພິເຕີ: ບໍ່ເຜັດເດີ້</p> | <p>Waiter: What would like to order? Sarah: I would like to order laab, fried fish and chicken soup. Waiter: What about you sir? Peter: I would like to order barbeque chicken, papaya salad and sticky rice. Waiter: Would you like to order beverages? Sarah: I'll take the fresh fruit juice and plain water. Peter: I'll take 2 Beer Lao Waiter: How spicy do you want the papaya salad? Peter: Not spicy, okay!</p> |
|---|---|

VOCABULARY

| | |
|----------|---|
| ສັ່ງ | to order |
| ຢາກສັ່ງ | would like to order |
| ໄກ່ | chicken |
| ຈີນ | to deep fry; deep fried |
| ຈີນປາ | fried fish |
| ຕົ້ມ | to boil; boiled |
| ປັ້ງໄກ່ | barbeque chicken |
| ເຂົ້າໜຽວ | sticky rice, sweet rice |
| ແກງໄກ່ | chicken soup |
| ຊີ້ນແຫ້ງ | dried beef |
| ລາບ | salad-like dish made with beef, pork, fish or chicken seasoned with herbs, spices, lime juice hot chili pepper and fish sauce |
| ລາບໄກ່ | salad-like dish made with chicken |

| | |
|---------------|---|
| ຕຳໝາກທຸ່ງ | Lao papaya salad seasoned with garlic, hot chili pepper, lime juice fish sauce, tamarind paste, tomato, shrimp paste. |
| ໝາກໄມ້ | fruit |
| ນ້ຳໝາກໄມ້ | fruit juice |
| ເບຍ | beer |
| ແກ້ວ | glass bottle |
| ເຄື່ອງດື່ມ | beverages |
| ເຫຼົ້າ | alcohol |
| ຂົ້ວ | to stir fry |
| ຂົ້ວຜັກ | stir fry vegetable |
| ຂົ້ວເຜີ | stir fry noodle |
| ດື່ມ | to drink |
| ນ້ຳລ້າງ | plain water |
| ເຢັນ | cold |
| ເຢັນໆ | very cold; repetition indicates the intensity of condition |
| ຍຳກຸ້ງ | shrimp salad |
| ຈອກ | glass, a cup |
| ຈອກແກ້ວ | a glass cup |
| ຈອກກາເຟ | a coffee cup |
| ບ່ວງສ້ອມ | silverware (spoon and fork) |
| ມີດ | knife |
| ຖ້ວຍ | dishes (bowls and plates) |
| ຮ້ອນ | hot |
| ນ້ຳກ້ອນ | ice |
| ກິນ, ຮັບປະທານ | to eat, to consume (formal) |
| ອາຫານ | food |
| ລາຍການອາຫານ | menu |
| ເຜັດ | hot, spicy |
| ເຜັດຫຼາຍ | very hot, very spicy |
| ຈາງ | bland |
| ພໍດີ | just right, perfect |

SUPPLEMENTAL VOCABULARY

| | |
|----------------|-----------------------------|
| ສັ່ງອາຫານ | to order food |
| ຮ້ານ | store, shop, boutique |
| ຮ້ານອາຫານທະເລ | seafood restaurant |
| ບໍລິການ | service |
| ເຫຼົ້າ, ສຸລາ | alcohol |
| ເຄື່ອງດື່ມເຢັນ | cold beverages, cold drinks |

VOWEL AND TONE DRILL: -າມ and -ານ

| | | | | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|------|-----|------|-----|
| ຕາມ | ຊາມ | ສາມ | ຖາມ | ຢາມ | ຍາມ | ຄວາມ | ຫາມ |
| ປານ | ສານ | ຈານ | ການ | ຫຼານ | ຊານ | ທານ | ຄານ |

CONSONANT DRILL

ລາວກິນແກງຂອງເຈົ້າ
 ເຈົ້າກິນແກງຂອງລາວ
 ຂໍເຂົ້າກັບໄກ່ແດ່
 ຂໍໄກ່ກັບເຂົ້າແດ່

TONE DRILL

Level tone: ໃຜກິນ?

ເມຍກິນ

ເມຍ ກິນຢູ່ໃສ?

ເມຍ ກິນຢູ່ຮ້ານອາຫານ ຢູ່ເມືອງລາວ

Low tone: ໃຜສັ່ງ?

ເດັກນ້ອຍສັ່ງ

ເດັກນ້ອຍສັ່ງຢູ່ໃສ?

ເດັກນ້ອຍສັ່ງ ຢູ່ຕະຫຼາດເຂົ້າ

Falling tone: ໃຜເວົ້າ?

ລູກເວົ້າ

ລູກເວົ້າຢູ່ໃສ?

ລູກເວົ້າຢູ່ໂຮງຮຽນ

High tone: ໃຜລ້ງວ?

ເຂົາລ້ງວ

ເຂົາລ້ງວຢູ່ໃສ?

ເຂົາລ້ງວຊ້າຍ ຢູ່ຮ້ານອາຫານ

Rising tone: ໃຜສອນ?

ທະຫານສອນ

ທະຫານສອນຢູ່ໃສ?

ທະຫານສອນຢູ່ໂຮງຮຽນ

PRACTICE

- The following are what you are likely to hear from the waiter, waitress, and food vendor.

| ຊິສັ່ງຫຍັງ? | ເອົາຫຍັງ? | ຢາກສັ່ງ...ບໍ? |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| ຊິສັ່ງຫຍັງບໍ? | ເອົາຫຍັງອີກບໍ? | ຢາກສັ່ງຫຍັງອີກບໍ? |
| ຊິສັ່ງເຄື່ອງດື່ມບໍ? | ເອົາເບຍອີກບໍ? | ຢາກຊື້ຫຍັງບໍ? |
| ຊິສັ່ງອາຫານບໍ? | ເອົາເຂົ້າໜຽວອີກບໍ? | |
| ຊິສັ່ງເບຍບໍ? | ເອົາຊ່ອຍແດ່? | ຊ່ອຍແດ່ |
| ຊິສັ່ງຂອງຫວານບໍ? | | |
| ຊິສັ່ງຫຍັງອີກບໍ? ສັ່ງຫຍັງເພີ່ມບໍ? | | |

2. Ordering different dish. Asking for the bill:

I would like to order ຂ້ອຍຢາກສັ່ງ...

Could I have ຂໍ...

ຂ້ອຍຢາກສັ່ງລາບໄກ່ ກັບແກງຮ້ອນໆ
 ຂ້ອຍຂໍເບຍລາວ ສອງກວດກັບຂອງແກ້ມແດ່?
 ຂ້ອຍຢາກສັ່ງຂົ້ວເຂົ້າ ກັບຂົ້ວຜັກ
 ຂ້ອຍຂໍເຂົ້າໜຽວ ກັບປີ້ໄກ່ແດ່
 ຂ້ອຍຢາກສັ່ງລາບຊີ້ນ ກັບເຂົ້າໜຽວ
 ຂ້ອຍຂໍແຈ່ວໝາກເລັ່ນ ກັບຊີ້ນແຫ້ງແດ່
 ຂ້ອຍຢາກສັ່ງຕຳໝາກຫຸ່ງ ຈີນປາ ກັບເຂົ້າໜຽວ
 ຂ້ອຍຂໍຂອງຫວານແດ່
 ຂ້ອຍຢາກສັ່ງຂົ້ວເຜີ
 ຂ້ອຍຂໍໝີ່ເປັດແດ່
 ຂ້ອຍຢາກສັ່ງແກງຕົ້ມຍຳທະເລ
 ຂ້ອຍຂໍກະເພນິມເຢັນແດ່?
 (ຂ້ອຍ)ຂໍໃບບິນແດ່?

3. Indicating what you like when ordering. ບໍ່...ຫຼາຍ. Not too...

ບໍ່ເຜັດຫຼາຍ

ບໍ່ເຄັມຫຼາຍ

ບໍ່ຫວານຫຼາຍ

ບໍ່ເຢັນຫຼາຍ

ບໍ່ສົ້ມຫຼາຍ

ບໍ່ດົບຫຼາຍ

ບໍ່ສຸກຫຼາຍ

Additional practice of ບໍ່...ຫຼາຍ. Not too...

ບໍ່ຮ້ອນຫຼາຍ

ບໍ່ໃຫຍ່ຫຼາຍ

ບໍ່ນ້ອຍຫຼາຍ

ບໍ່ງາມຫຼາຍ

ບໍ່ແພງຫຼາຍ

ບໍ່ແຂບຫຼາຍ

ບໍ່ສູງຫຼາຍ

COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGE: FRAME 2

| | |
|---|---|
| <p>ຜູ້ເສີບ: ທ່ານຢາກສັ່ງນ້ຳຫວານຫຍັງບໍ?</p> <p>ວິໄລພອນ: ຂ້ອຍຢາກສັ່ງນ້ຳຫວານໝາກກ້ວຍສອງຖ້ວຍ</p> <p>ຜູ້ເສີບ: ນ້ຳຫວານໝາກກ້ວຍສອງຖ້ວຍ. ທ່ານຊິເອົາຊາຮ້ອນ ຫຼື ກາເຟບໍ?</p> <p>ວິໄລພອນ: ເອີ ຂ້ອຍຊິເອົາກາເຟດຳສອງຈອກ</p> | <p>Waiter: Would you like to order dessert?</p> <p>Vilayphone: I would like to order 2 bowls of the banana with coconut dessert.</p> <p>Waiter: Two bowls of banana coconut dessert. Would you like some tea or coffee?</p> <p>Vilayphone: Sure, I'll have 2 cups of black coffee</p> |
|---|---|

VOCABULARY

| | |
|--------------------|---|
| ນ້ຳຫວານ | a dessert made with coconut milk, sugar, various fruits with a dash of salt |
| ຂອງຫວານ | dessert, to include pastries, cakes, cookies, baked goods or fruits |
| ຂະໜົມ/ເຂົ້າໜົມຫວານ | sweets, candy |
| ໝາກໄມ້ | fruit |
| ຖ້ວຍ | bowl |
| ນ້ຳຊາ / ຊາ | tea |

SUPPLEMENTAL VOCABULARY

| | |
|---------------|---------------------------|
| ນ້ຳຕານ | sugar |
| ເກືອ | salt |
| ນ້ຳປາ | fish sauce |
| ນ້ຳນົມ | milk |
| ນ້ຳສົ້ມ | vinegar |
| ສີລາຊາ | chili pepper sauce |
| ນ້ຳໝາກໄມ້ | fruit juice |
| ເຮັດເຜັດໆ | make it very hot |
| ໝາກເຜັດ | chili pepper |
| ແກງ | soup |
| ແກງຕົ້ມຍຳທະເລ | hot and sour seafood soup |

SOUND DRILLS

VOWEL AND TONE DRILL

| | | | | | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| ສົມ | ຂົມ | ລົມ | ນົມ | ຈົມ | ຈົ່ມ | ຕົມ | ຕົ້ມ | ສົ້ມ |
| ນອນ | ສອນ | ຕອນ | ຕ້ອນ | ຍ້ອນ | ຜ່ອນ | ກ່ອນ | ກ້ອນ | ພ້ອນ |

VOWEL DRILL

| | |
|--------|------|
| ໄx; ໃx | -າຍ |
| ໄປ | ປາຍ |
| ໃຊ້ | ຊ້າຍ |
| ໃສ | ສາຍ |
| ໃຜ | ຂາຍ |
| ໄຟ | ປ້າຍ |
| ໄທ | ຊາຍ |

TONE DRILL

ເອົາຊາ ແລະ ກາເຟ
 ຜັດກຸ້ງເຜັດງ
 ຕຳໝາກຫຸ່ງເຄັມງ
 ຊີ້ຊີ້ນໄກ່
 ສັ່ງລາບດິບ

PRACTICE

1. What you will hear from a waiter or waitress (continued).

ຊີ້ບເຫຼົ້າຫຍັງ? / ຊີ້ສັ່ງເຫຼົ້າຫຍັງ?
 ຊີ້ບ / ຊີ້ສັ່ງ ຫຍັງອີກບໍ່?
 ຊີ້ບ / ຊີ້ສັ່ງ ອາຫານຫຍັງ?
 ຊີ້ບ / ຊີ້ສັ່ງ ເຄື່ອງດື່ມຫຍັງ?
 ຊີ້ບ / ຊີ້ສັ່ງ ເບຍຫຍັງ?
 ຊີ້ບ / ຊີ້ສັ່ງ ນ້ຳໂສດາຫຍັງ?
 ເອົາຫຍັງບໍ່?

2. Ordering dishes.

2.1 Asking for a menu.

ຂໍເບິ່ງລາຍການອາຫານແດ່

2.2 Ordering dishes.

ຖາມ: ສັ່ງຫຍັງບໍ່?

ຕອບ: ຂໍເຂົ້າປຽກກຸ້ງແດ່

ຂໍແກງໜໍ່ໄມ້ແດ່

ຂໍ ປຶ້ງໄກ່ແດ່

ຂໍເຂົ້າໜຽວແດ່

ຂໍລາບໄກ່ແດ່

2.3 Ordering drinks.

ຖາມ: ທ່ານ ຊື້ສິ່ງເຄື່ອງດື່ມຫຍັງບໍ?

ຕອບ: ຂໍນໍ້າລ້າງສາມຈອກ

ຂໍເບຍລາວຫ້າແກ້ວ

ຂໍນໍ້າແປບຊີສອງແກ້ວ

ຂໍເຫຼົ້າແວງຈອກໜຶ່ງ

ຂໍກາເຟນົມເຢັນ

ຂໍນໍ້າຊາ

ຂໍນໍ້າໝາກໄມ້ສົດ

ຂໍນໍ້ານົມ

3. Specifying portion of dishes ordered. ຈານ is a classifier for plate. ຈອກ is a classifier for a cup or a glass. ຖ້ວຍ is a classifier for bowls.

ຂໍນໍ້າໝາກກ້ຽງສອງຈອກ

ຂໍລາບຊີ້ນຈານໜຶ່ງ

ຂໍເບຍສອງຈອກ

ຂໍເບຍສອງແກ້ວ

ຂໍກາເຟສາມຈອກ

ຂໍເຝີຖ້ວຍໜຶ່ງ

ຂໍຂົ້ວເຂົ້າຈານໜຶ່ງ

ຂໍຕໍາໝາກຫຸ່ງສາມຈານ

COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGE: FRAME 3

| | |
|---|--|
| <p>ວິໄລ: ເປັນຈັ່ງໃດ? ອາຫານເຜັດບໍ່?</p> <p>ເດວິດ: ເອີ ເຜັດ ແລະ ແຊບອີ່ຫຼີ</p> <p>ຜູ້ເສີບ: ທ່ານ ຊິເອົາຫຍັງອີກບໍ່?</p> <p>ເດວິດ: ບໍ່ ຂອບໃຈ ຂ້ອຍອີ່ມຫຼາຍແລ້ວ</p> <p>ວິໄລ: ນ້ອງໆ ມາເກັບເງິນແດ່</p> | <p>Vilay: How is it? Is the food spicy?</p> <p>David: Yep, it's spicy and really good.</p> <p>Waiter: Would you like anything else?</p> <p>David: No, thank you. I'm very full.</p> <p>Vilay: Come collect the money.</p> |
|---|--|

VOCABULARY

| | |
|-------------------|---|
| ເປັນຈັ່ງໃດ? | How is it? How are you doing? |
| ແຊບຂະໜາດ | really tasty |
| ເອົາອີກ, ເອົາຕື່ມ | some more |
| ອີ່ມ | to be full |
| ອີ່ມແລ້ວ | full already |
| ເກັບເງິນ | to collect the money |
| ໃບເກັບເງິນ | receipt |
| ຄືກັນ | also |
| ຄົນເສີບ | waiter, waitress |
| ນ້ອງໆ | A polite form of addressing someone younger than you. |

SUPPLEMENTAL VOCABULARY

| | |
|------------|-----------------------------|
| ເງິນກີບ | kip currency (Lao currency) |
| ທັງໝົດ | altogether |
| ເທົ່າໃດ? | How much? |
| ມື້ນີ້ | today |
| ພິເສດ | special |
| ມີ ບໍ່ແລ້ວ | to have enough |
| ກາເຟດຳ | black coffee |

| | |
|-------------|---|
| ກາເຟນົມ | coffee with milk (Usually condensed milk) |
| ໃສ່ນໍ້າຕານ | with sugar |
| ໃສ່ນໍ້າກ້ອນ | with ice |
| ຂໍ...ອີກ | Could I have (more or additional) |

VOWEL AND TONE DRILL: -ອກ and -າກ

| | | | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| ປອກ | ນອກ | ບອກ | ຈອກ | ສອກ | ຊອກ | ອອກ |
| ປາກ | ຕາກ | ສາກ | ລາກ | ນາກ | ຍາກ | ຢາກ |

CONSONANT DRILL: ປ - ພ

| | |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| ເອື້ອຍເວົ້າກັບປ້າ | ປ້າເວົ້າກັບເອື້ອຍ |
| ມື້ອື່ນໄປພີ່ຂ້ອຍ | ໄປພີ່ຂ້ອຍມື້ອື່ນ |
| ຂ້ອຍຊິໄປກັບເພື່ອນ | ເພື່ອນຊິໄປກັບຂ້ອຍ |

TONE DRILL: DIFFERENT TONES IN PHRASES

ແກງປາແຊບຫຼາຍ
 ເຊີນມັ່ນໂຕະໄດ້ແລ້ວ
 ກາເຟບໍ່ໃສ່ນໍ້າຕານບໍ່ແຊບ
 ສັ່ງອາຫານຫ້າຢ່າງພໍບໍ່?
 ມື້ນີ້ ມີອາຫານພິເສດບໍ່?

PRACTICE

1. Asking if someone wants anything else.

ຊິເອົາຫຍັງອີກບໍ່?
 ຊິເອົາລາບອີກບໍ່?
 ຊິເອົາເບຍອີກບໍ່?
 ຊິເອົາ ນໍ້າຫວານອີກບໍ່?

ຊິເອົາ ນ້ຳເຢັນໆອີກບໍ?

ຊິເອົາ ນ້ຳຊາອີກບໍ?

2. Asking for a bill.

ເກັບເງິນແດ່

ເອົາເງິນແດ່

ໄລ່ເງິນແດ່

ຄິດໄລ່ເງິນແດ່

ຂໍເຊັກບິນແດ່

ຂໍໃບເກັບເງິນແດ່

ລວມທັງໝົດທໍ່ໃດ?

DIALOGUE FOR LISTENING

| | |
|---|--|
| <p>ຄົນເສີບ: ສະບາຍດີທ່ານ. ມື້ນີ້ ທ່ານຢາກກິນອາຫານພິເສດບໍ?</p> <p>ທອງຈັນ: ມີຫຍັງພິເສດ ທີ່ແຊບໆບໍ?</p> <p>ຄົນເສີບ: ມີ ທ່ານ ມື້ນີ້ ມີລາບປານ້ຳຂອງສົດໆແຊບໆ</p> <p>ທອງຈັນ: ເອີ ຄັນຊັ້ນ ເອົາລາບປາຈານນຶ່ງ ຊິນແຫ້ງ ຕຳໝາກແຕງກັບຜັກສົດຫຼາຍແນວ</p> <p>ຄົນເສີບ: ເຄື່ອງດື່ມເດ? ພວກເຮົາມີ ເຫຼົ້າແວງ ເບຍ ແລະ ວິສະກີ</p> <p>ທອງຈັນ: ເອີ ເອົາເຫຼົ້າແວງຂາວແກ້ວນຶ່ງກັບນ້ຳເຢັນໆ</p> <p>ຄົນເສີບ: ທ່ານຢາກສັ່ງຂອງຫວານບໍ?</p> <p>ທອງຈັນ: ບໍ່ອອກ ເອົາກາເຟດຳ ແລ້ວຂໍໃບເກັບເງິນພ້ອມ</p> | <p>Waiter: Hello sir. Would you like something special today?</p> <p>Thongchanh: Anything special that is good?</p> <p>Waiter: Yes we do. Today we have the Mekong fish salad and Mekong slice fish which is very fresh and very delicious.</p> <p>Thongchanh: In that case, I'll have one dish of the fish salad, the dried beef and the cucumber salad plus various fresh vegetables.</p> <p>Waiter: What about drinks? We have white wine, beer and whiskey.</p> <p>Thongchanh: Sure, I'll take a bottle of white wine and cold water.</p> <p>Waiter: Would you like to order some dessert?</p> <p>Thongchanh: Not really, I'll take a black coffee and the bill.</p> |
|---|--|

EXERCISE

1. Discuss the content of the *Dialogue for Listening* in Lao. Favorite Lao dish.
-

2. This is how you ask for a menu in Lao:
-

3. You want to find out about today's specials, so you ask:
-

4. Order plain water and a cold beer.
-

5. Ask for the bill:
-

ACTIVITY

Role-play: You and your friends are in a restaurant and want to have dinner.

Order your favorite dishes and drinks.

Request to have your papaya salad prepared very hot.

Ask the waiter to hold the milk and sugar for your coffee.

Ask to have the bill be given to you.


Tell the waiter you will order for your wife.

Ask the waiter, if the restaurant accepts credit card.

Ask when the restaurant closes.





Ask if the beef salad is cooked or raw.

Ask and then order 2 German beers.

 ການບອກເວລາ ແລະ ການເດີນທາງ
(Telling Time and Traveling)

OBJECTIVES

Upon completion of this lesson, you will be able to:

-  ask for time
-  find out about departure and arrival times
-  ask about duration of time
-  tell time references

COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGE: FRAME 1

| | |
|--|---|
| <p>ລີຊ້າ: ລົດໂດຍສານໄປ ວັງວຽງ ມື້ໜຶ່ງ ມີຈັກຄັ້ງ?</p> <p>ພະນັກງານ: ມື້ໜຶ່ງ ຫຼາຍກ່ວາສາມຄັ້ງ</p> <p>ລີຊ້າ: ດັ່ງວຕອນເຊົ້າ ອອກຈັກໂມງ?</p> <p>ພະນັກງານ: ຕອນເຊົ້າ ອອກແປດໂມງ</p> <p>ລີຊ້າ: ຕອນທ່ຽງເດ ອອກຈັກໂມງ?</p> <p>ພະນັກງານ: ຕອນທ່ຽງ ອອກປ່າຍສາມໂມງ</p> <p>ລີຊ້າ: ໄປວັງວຽງ ໃຊ້ເວລາຈັກຊົ່ວໂມງ?</p> <p>ພະນັກງານ: ປະມານສາມຊົ່ວໂມງ</p> | <p>Lisa: How many trips a day do they (passenger vehicles) go to Vangvieng?</p> <p>Clerk: More than three trips daily.</p> <p>Lisa: When does the morning trip depart?</p> <p>Clerk: At 8:00 AM.</p> <p>Lisa: What about the afternoon?</p> <p>Clerk: At 3:00 PM</p> <p>Lisa: How many hours does it take to get to Vangvieng?</p> <p>Clerk: About 3 hours.</p> |
|--|---|

VOCABULARY

| | |
|------------|---|
| ລົດ | generic name for vehicles: car, pick-up trucks |
| ລົດໂດຍສານ | passenger vehicle |
| ເຊົ້າ | a.m., morning |
| ໃຊ້ | to use, utilize |
| ໄປ | to, toward; to go, going |
| ວັງວຽງ | a city north of Vientiane where most foreigners frequently like to visit |
| ນາທີ | minutes |
| ວິນາທີ | seconds |
| ຈັກ...? | how many + classifier, quantifier |
| ກ່ວາ | more than; also used in comparative degree meaning more, -er. ສືບກວ່າ more than ten |
| ຄັ້ງ | number of trips; times |
| ອອກ | to leave, take off, to depart, to exit |
| ...ຈັກໂມງ? | What time. . . ? |

| | |
|----------------|---|
| ຊົ່ວໂມງ | hour |
| ຈັກຊົ່ວໂມງ? | How many hours? |
| ທຸ່ງ | noon, 12:00 p.m. |
| ຕົງ | sharp; straight, (when it is used with time, it means on the dot/exactly) |
| ແລ່ນ | to run; to operate |
| ປະມານ | about, approximately, around |
| ຕໍ່ໄປ | next |
| ດຽວ, ເທົ່ານັ້ນ | one, sole, only |

SUPPLEMENTAL VOCABULARY

| | |
|-------------------|-----------------------------|
| ຕາຕະລາງເວລາລົດອອກ | daily departure schedule |
| ຖ້ວນໜ້າ | next trip |
| ເຮືອ | boat, ship, ferry, canoe |
| ບິນ | to fly |
| ລົດໄຟ | train |
| ເຮືອບິນ | airplane |
| ເດີນເຮືອບິນ | airport |
| ຮອດ, ເຖິງ | to arrive |
| ຫຼາຍ | a lot, much, very |
| ນ້ອຍ | small |
| ຫຼາຍກວ່າ | more than |
| ໄກ | far |
| ໃກ້ | near |
| ຈາກ | from |
| ລົດໄຟໃຕ້ດິນ | a subway, underground train |
| ສະຖານີ | station |

SOUND DRILLS

VOWEL AND TONE DRILL

| | | | | | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| ໄປ | ໄກ | ໃຜ | ໃດ | ໃຈ | ໄຟ | ໄດ້ | ໃກ້ | ໃນ |
| ສຸດ | ຢຸດ | ຊຸດ | ຫຼຸດ | ຈຸດ | ດຸດ | ຄຸດ | ພຸດ | ກຸດ |

CONSONANT DRILL

| | |
|-----|-----|
| ຄົນ | ຄັນ |
| ປົນ | ປັນ |
| ດົນ | ດັນ |
| ກົນ | ກັນ |
| ສົນ | ສັນ |

TONE DRILL

1. ນາຍຄູໄປໂຮງຮຽນ
2. ຈ່າຍສິບກວ່າກີບ
3. ແລ່ນຫ້າຖ້ວນຕໍ່ມື້
4. ລົດບັນທຸກສິນຄ້າ
5. ຜົມສີເຫຼືອງ

PRACTICE

1. Asking how often the buses, boat, ferry, etc. How many trips? ມີຈັກຄັ້ງ?

ລົດໄປເມືອງວັງວຽງ ມີຈັກຄັ້ງ?

ຕັກຊີໄປເມືອງທາແຂກ ມີຈັກຄັ້ງ?

ລົດເມໄປເມືອງປາກຂັນ ມີຈັກຄັ້ງ?

ລົດໄຟໄປເມືອງອູດອນ ມີຈັກຄັ້ງ?

ເຮືອບິນໄປແຂວງຫຼວງພະບາງ ມີຈັກຄັ້ງ?

ເຮືອບິນໄປເມືອງອິນໂດເນເຊຍ ມີຈັກຄັ້ງ?

ລົດຕຸກໆໄປຕະຫຼາດ ມີຈັກຄັ້ງ?

ລົດໂດຍສານໄປປະເທດຫວຽດນາມ ມີຈັກຄັ້ງ?

To respond to these questions... ມີຈັກຄັ້ງ?

ຖາມ: ລົດໂດຍສານໄປບ້ານທາດຫຼວງ ມີຈັກຄັ້ງ?

ຕອບ: ມີສາມຄັ້ງ

ຖາມ: ລົດຕັກຊີໄປທ່າເດືອນ ມີຈັກຄັ້ງ?

ຕອບ: ມີສິບກວ່າຄັ້ງ

ຖາມ: ເຮືອບິນໄປແຂວງບໍ່ແກ້ວ ມີຈັກຄັ້ງ?

ຕອບ: ມີຄັ້ງດຽວ

ຖາມ: ເຮືອໄປຖ້ຳຕິ່ງ ມີຈັກຄັ້ງ?

ຕອບ: ມີຫຼາຍຄັ້ງ

2. Number + ກວ່າ ຖ້ວນ over...trips, more than...trips.

| ສິບ | ກວ່າ | ຖ້ວນ |
|-------|------|------|
| ຊາວ | ↓ | ↓ |
| ສາມ | ↓ | ↓ |
| ຮ້ອຍ | ↓ | ↓ |
| ເກົ້າ | ↓ | ↓ |

3. Comparison by adding adjective + ກວ່າ: . .than...

ຢູ່ນີ້ດີກວ່າຢູ່ພຸ້ນ

ເມືອງນີ້ນ້ອຍກວ່າເມືອງນັ້ນ

ວຽງຈັນ ໃຫຍ່ກວ່າຫຼວງພະບາງ

ໝາກຖົ່ວລຽນ ແຊບກວ່າໝາກກ້ຽງ

ປາເມັກແພງກວ່າທຸ້ງ

ຜູ້ສາວຫຼວງພະບາງງາມກວ່າຜູ້ສາວວຽງຈັນ

ເມືອງໜອງຄາຍ ໃກ້ກວ່າບາງກອກ

ຕະຫຼາດເຊົ້າ ໃກ້ກວ່າຕະຫຼາດທາດຫຼວງ

ອາຫານລາວ ເຜັດກວ່າອາຫານຍີ່ປຸ່ນ

COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGE: FRAME 2

| | |
|---|---|
| <p>ແອັດດີ: ປີ້ເຮືອບິນໄປກັບສະຫະລັດເທົ່າໃດ?</p> <p>ພະນັກງານ: ຊັ້ນທີໜຶ່ງ ຫຼື ຊັ້ນທີສອງ?</p> <p>ແອັດດີ: ຊັ້ນທີສອງລາຄາເທົ່າໃດ?</p> <p>ພະນັກງານ: ພັນສາມຮ້ອຍໂດລາ</p> <p>ແອັດດີ: ຊັ້ນທີໜຶ່ງເດ?</p> <p>ພະນັກງານ: ຊັ້ນທີໜຶ່ງ ສອງພັນຫົກຮ້ອຍໂດລາ. ທ່ານຊືເອົາຊັ້ນໃດ?</p> <p>ແອັດດີ: ຂ້ອຍຊືເອົາຊັ້ນທີໜຶ່ງ ມີຕຽງນອນບໍ?</p> <p>ພະນັກງານ: ມີ ມີຕຽງນອນໃຫ້ທ່ານນອນສະບາຍໆ</p> <p>ແອັດດີ: ດີຫຼາຍ ລວມທັງໝົດເທົ່າໃດ?</p> <p>ພະນັກງານ: ທັງໝົດ ສອງພັນຫົກຮ້ອຍໂດລາ. ທ່ານຊືຈ່າຍຈັ່ງໃດ?</p> <p>ແອັດດີ: ຂ້ອຍຊືຈ່າຍເປັນເຊັກເດີນທາງ.</p> <p>ພະນັກງານ: ຂອບໃຈຫຼາຍໆ</p> | <p>Eddie: How much is a roundtrip plane ticket to the US?</p> <p>Clerk: First or second class?</p> <p>Eddie: How much is the second class?</p> <p>Clerk: \$1,300</p> <p>Eddie: How about the first class?</p> <p>Clerk: First class is \$2,600. Which class will you take?</p> <p>Eddie: I'll take the first class. Is there a bed?</p> <p>Clerk: Yes there is a bed for you to sleep (rest) comfortably?</p> <p>Eddie: Very good, how much is it altogether.</p> <p>Clerk: The total is \$2,600. How are you going to pay?</p> <p>Eddie: With the Traveler's check.</p> <p>Clerk: Thank you very much.</p> |
|---|---|

VOCABULARY

| | |
|------------|---------------------------------|
| ປີ້ | ticket |
| ປີ້ໄປກັບ | roundtrip ticket |
| ຊັ້ນ | class, level, floor |
| ປີ້ເຮືອບິນ | airline ticket, airplane ticket |
| ສາຍການບິນ | airline (company) |
| ນອນ | sleep, sleeping, to sleep |
| ຕຽງ | bed |
| ໃຫ້ | for, to let |

| | |
|------------------------|--|
| ໄປ | to go, going, toward |
| ກັບ / ກັບມາ / ກັບຄືນມາ | to return, to come back |
| ຂ້ອຍຂໍ | I would like to...Can I...May I...A request. |
| ຊັ້ນລຸ່ມ | lower level |
| ຊັ້ນເທິງ | upper level |
| ຖ້ວນດຽວ | one way, one trip, the only trip |
| ຈ່າຍ | to pay |
| ລວມທັງໝົດ | total, altogether |
| ເທົ່າໃດ? | How much? |
| ດີຫຼາຍ | very good, great, swell |
| ມີ | there is..., there are... |
| ...ຈັ່ງໃດ? | How? |
| ເດີນທາງ | to travel, take a trip |
| ນັກທ່ອງທ່ຽວ | tourist |

SUPPLEMENTAL VOCABULARY

| | |
|---------------------|--|
| ເຮືອບິນຂຶ້ນ.../ ອອກ | airplane take off/...depart |
| ລົງ | down, go down, come down, landed |
| ໄປຮອດ | to arrive (there), to get to |
| ມາຮອດ | to arrive (here), to reach, to get to |
| ຕໍ່ | to transfer, continue |
| ແວ່ | drop in and visit; stop en route, go off the road. |
| ອອກ | to depart, to leave, to take off |
| ລົດໂດຍສານ | passenger vehicle, buses, taxis, |
| ລົດຕັກຊີ | taxi |
| ລົດເມ | bus |
| ຂາເຂົ້າ | arrival |
| ຂາອອກ | departure |

SOUND DRILL

| | | | | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| ຈັບ | ກັບ | ປັບ | ນັບ | ຊັບ | ລັບ | ງັບ | ຮັບ | ຕັບ |
| ເມືອ | ເຮືອ | ເສືອ | ເກືອ | ເຫຼືອ | ເມື່ອ | ເຮື່ອ | ເຊື່ອ | ເສື່ອ |

CONSONANT DRILL

| | | | | | | | |
|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|------|-----|-----|
| ນາ | ໃນ | ນຳ | ນາມ | ນ້ຳ | ນາງ | ໂນນ | ນອກ |
| ສີ | ສຽຍ | ສາຍ | ໃສ | ສົມ | ສ້າງ | ສານ | ສຽງ |

TONE DRILL

DIFFERENT TONES IN PHRASES

1. ປີ້ໄປກັບເທົ່າໃດ?
2. ຊື້ປີ້ຢູ່ເດີນເຮືອບິນ
3. ຄ່າເຮືອບິນແພງກວ່າຄ່າລົດໄຟ
4. ຂ້ອຍຢາກໄປເບິ່ງຊັ້ນທີໜຶ່ງ
5. ຂ້ອຍຢາກຊື້ປີ້ເຮືອບິນໃນອິນເຕີແນັດ

PRACTICE

1. Asking about the fares with ປີ້...ໄປ...ເທົ່າໃດ?: *How much is the ticket to.?*

or

What is the cost of... ?. ຄ່າ...ເທົ່າໃດ?

ຖາມ: ປີ້ລົດໄຟໄປວຽງຈັນເທົ່າໃດ? ຫຼື ຄ່າລົດໄຟໄປວຽງຈັນເທົ່າໃດ?

ຖາມ: ປີ້ລົດເມໄປວັງວຽງເທົ່າໃດ? ຫຼື ຄ່າລົດເມໄປວັງວຽງເທົ່າໃດ?

ຖາມ: ປີ້ເຮືອບິນໄປແຂວງຄຳມ່ວນເທົ່າໃດ? ຫຼື ຄ່າເຮືອບິນໄປແຂວງຄຳມ່ວນເທົ່າໃດ?

ຖາມ: ປີ້ເຮືອໄປທ່ານາແລ້ງເທົ່າໃດ? ຫຼື ຄ່າເຮືອໄປທ່ານາແລ້ງເທົ່າໃດ?

ຖາມ: ປີ້ລົດໄຟໃຕ້ດິນເທົ່າໃດ? ຫຼື ຄ່າລົດໄຟໃຕ້ດິນເທົ່າໃດ?

2. Buying a ticket ຂໍຊື້ປີ້...ໄປ...ແດ່ I would like a ticket to...

ຂໍຊື້ປີ້ລົດໂດຍສານໄປວັງວຽງ ສອງປີ້ແດ່?

ຂໍຊື້ປີ້ລົດໄຟໄປແຂວງຊຽງຂວາງ ສີ່ປີ້ແດ່?

ຂໍຊື້ປີ້ເຮືອບິນໄປຊຶກຄາໂກ ສອງປີ້ແດ່?

ຂໍຊື້ປີ້ເຮືອໄປສີ່ພັນດອນ ສາມປີ້ແດ່?

ຂໍຊື້ປີ້ລົດເມໄປຫຼວງພະບາງ ຫົກປີ້ແດ່?

ຂໍຊື້ປີ້ເຮືອບິນໄປປະເທດອິນເດຍ ສອງປີ້ແດ່?

COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGE: FRAME 3

| | |
|---|--|
| <p>ແອັດດີ: ລົດເມດ່ວນ ໄປແຂວງບໍລິຄຳໄຊ ອອກຈັກໂມງ?</p> <p>ພະນັກງານ: (ອອກ)ບ່າຍສາມໂມງ ສິບຫ້າ</p> <p>ແອັດດີ: ໄປຮອດເວລາໃດ/ໄປຮອດຈັກໂມງ?</p> <p>ພະນັກງານ: ໄປຮອດມື້ອື່ນເຊົ້າ</p> <p>ແອັດດີ: ຈັກໂມງ?</p> <p>ພະນັກງານ: ຫ້າໂມງເຊົ້າ</p> <p>ແອັດດີ: ຄ່າປີ້ເທົ່າໃດ?</p> <p>ພະນັກງານ: ປີ້ໄປກັບ ຫຼື ຖ້ວງດຽວ?</p> <p>ແອັດດີ: ປີ້ໄປກັບ</p> <p>ພະນັກງານ: ປີ້ໄປກັບ ສອງແສນກີບ. ທ່ານຊື້ເອົາຈັກປີ້?</p> <p>ແອັດດີ: ຂ້ອຍຊື້ເອົາສີ່ປີ້. ທັງໝົດເທົ່າໃດ?</p> <p>ພະນັກງານ: ສີ່ປີ້ ລວມທັງໝົດ ແປດແສນກີບ</p> <p>ແອັດດີ: ນີ້ເງິນ ຂອບໃຈຫຼາຍໆ</p> <p>ພະນັກງານ: ບໍ່ເປັນຫຍັງ ໂຊກດີທ່ານ!</p> | <p>Eddie: What time does the express bus depart for Bolikhamxay Province?</p> <p>Clerk: At 3:15 PM</p> <p>Eddie: When does it arrive?</p> <p>Clerk: Tomorrow morning.</p> <p>Eddie: What time?</p> <p>Clerk: 5:00 AM</p> <p>Eddie: What is the cost of a ticket?</p> <p>Clerk: Roundtrip or one way?</p> <p>Eddie: A roundtrip ticket</p> <p>Clerk: A roundtrip ticket is 200,000 kip. How many tickets do you need?</p> <p>Eddie: I'll take four. What is the total?</p> <p>Clerk: Four tickets! Altogether is 800,000 kip.</p> <p>Eddie: Here is the money. Thank you very much.</p> <p>Clerk: It's okay, good luck!</p> |
|---|--|

VOCABULARY

| | |
|-----------|--|
| ດ່ວນ | urgent, express |
| ທາງດ່ວນ | expressway |
| ລົດເມດ່ວນ | express bus |
| ມື້ອື່ນ | tomorrow |
| ຖ້ວງດຽວ | one way trip |
| ໄປຮອດ | to arrive (there), to reach, to get to |
| ຈັກໂມງ? | What time? |
| ເວລາໃດ? | When? |

| | |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| ຄ່າປີ້ | cost of the ticket |
| ມື້ນີ້ | today |
| ຂຶ້ນ | to board, to go up |
| ແປດໂມງເຊົ້າ | 8 a.m. |
| ເຄິ່ງຊົ່ວໂມງ | half an hour |
| ມື້ວານນີ້ | yesterday |
| ລວມທັງໝົດ, ທັງໝົດ | total, altogether |
| ແສນ | 100,000 (amount) |
| ສະຖານີ | station |

SUPPLEMENTAL VOCABULARY

| | |
|----------|--|
| ມື້ໜ້າ | another day, next day |
| ໂມງ | clock, watch |
| ຊົ່ວໂມງ | hour |
| ໄວ | fast |
| ດ້ວຍ | <i>prep.</i> with; by way of; because of; also, too; made of |
| ນາທີ | minutes |
| ວິນາທີ | second |
| ເວລາ | time |
| ຕອນເຊົ້າ | the morning |
| ຕອນປ່າຍ | the afternoon |
| ຕອນແລງ | the evening |
| ປີ | year |
| ເດືອນ | month |
| ອາທິດ | week |
| ລະດູ | season |
| ເດືອນໜ້າ | next month |

SOUND DRILL: ອກ

| | | | | | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|------|-----|------|
| ບອກ | ຊອກ | ປອກ | ດອກ | ຈອກ | ສອກ | ອອກ | ຕອກ | ຖອກ |
| ສຽງ | ຊຽນ | ປຽນ | ແສງ | ແປງ | ສອນ | ບ່ອນ | ຂາວ | ຂ່າວ |

VOWEL DRILL

| | | | | | | | | |
|-----|------|------|-----|-----|------|-----|-----|-----|
| ກັນ | ປັນ | ດັນ | ກົນ | ປົນ | ດົນ | ໄກ | ໄປ | ໃດ |
| ຕົກ | ຫົກ | ປົກ | ມັກ | ຮັກ | ຫັກ | ກອດ | ປອດ | ຈອດ |
| ນອນ | ບ່ອນ | ກ່ອນ | ຫາມ | ຕາມ | ຫ້າມ | ຕົວ | ຜົວ | ຫົວ |

TONE DRILL

1. ຮອດພຸ້ນແລ້ວ
2. ອອກສະຖານີສາມໂມງເຊົ້າ
3. ຄ່າປີ້ເຮືອບິນແພງຫຼາຍ
4. ມີສິບກວ່າຖ້ຽວ
5. ຂັບລົດໄປໄກ

PRACTICE

1. Asking about departure and arrival time... ຈັກໂມງ? . *What time?*

1.1 ເວລາອອກ... *departure time...*

| | | | | |
|--------------|---|---------------------------|---|----------------|
| <u>ລົດເມ</u> | | <u>ໄປ ສະຫວັນນະເຂດ ອອກ</u> | | <u>ຈັກໂມງ?</u> |
| ເຮືອບິນ | ↓ | ປາກເຊ | ↓ | ↓ |
| ຕັກຊີ | ↓ | ຕະຫຼາດເຊົ້າ | ↓ | ↓ |
| ລົດດ່ວນ | ↓ | ທ່າແຂກ | ↓ | ↓ |

| | | | | | |
|-------|---|---------|---|---|---|
| ລົດໄຟ | ↓ | ໜອງຄາຍ | ↓ | ↓ | ↓ |
| ເຮືອ | ↓ | ຖ້ຳຕິ່ງ | ↓ | ↓ | ↓ |

a. ໄປຮອດ/ໄປເຖິງ *arrival time...to arrive (there)*

ລົດໄຟດ່ວນໄປຮອດບ້ານເກີນຈັກໂມງ?

ລົດເມໄປເຖິງບ້ານທາດຫຼວງຈັກໂມງ?

ເຮືອບິນໄປຮອດປະເທດສິງກະໂປຈັກໂມງ?

ລົດໂດຍສານໄປເຖິງວັດສີສະເກດຈັກໂມງ?

ລົດໄຟໃຕ້ດິນໄປຮອດເມືອງວໍຊິງຕັນຈັກໂມງ?

1.3 ມາຮອດ / ມາເຖິງ *arrival time...to arrive (here)*

ລົດໄຟດ່ວນຈາກບ້ານເກີນມາຮອດຈັກໂມງ?

ລົດເມຈາກບ້ານທາດຫຼວງມາເຖິງຈັກໂມງ?

ເຮືອບິນຈາກປະເທດສິງກະໂປມາຮອດຈັກໂມງ?

ລົດໂດຍສານຈາກວັດສີສະເກດມາເຖິງຈັກໂມງ?

ລົດໄຟໃຕ້ດິນຈາກເມືອງວໍຊິງຕັນມາຮອດຈັກໂມງ?

Note: For arrival be mindful to include the verb of motion. ຮອດ simply is to arrive, but with the verb of motion ໄປ / ມາ you will be able to tell whether you are there ໄປຮອດ or here ມາຮອດ.

Example: ລາວໄປຮອດຫົກໂມງເຊົ້າ

He got there (arrive) at 6 a.m.

1. ການບອກເວລາ...telling time.

Colloquial Lao time. It is used throughout the country. Basically, the day is broken down to:

| Times of Day | | Approximate Hour | Examples |
|----------------|----------|-------------------------------|------------------------|
| Midnight | ທ່ຽງຄືນ | 12:00 a.m. - 5:00 a.m. | ຕອນເດິກທ່ຽງຄືນ |
| Dawn | ກາງເດິກ | 1:00 a.m. | ໜຶ່ງໂມງເຊົ້າ |
| | | 1:15 a.m. | ໜຶ່ງໂມງສິບຫ້າ ຕອນເຊົ້າ |
| Morning | ຕອນເຊົ້າ | 6:00-11:00 a.m. | |
| | | 6: 00 a. m. | ຫົກໂມງເຊົ້າ |
| | | 7: 00 a.m. | ເຈັດໂມງເຊົ້າ |
| | | 7:15 a.m. | ເຈັດໂມງສິບຫ້າ ຕອນເຊົ້າ |
| | | 7:30 a.m. | ເຈັດໂມງເຄິ່ງ ຕອນເຊົ້າ |
| | | 8:00 a.m. | ແປດໂມງເຊົ້າ |
| | | 8:15 a.m. | ແປດໂມງສິບຫ້າ ຕອນເຊົ້າ |
| | | 9:00 a.m. | ເກົ້າໂມງເຊົ້າ |
| | | 10:00 a.m. | ສິບໂມງເຊົ້າ |
| | | 11:00 a.m. | ສິບເອັດໂມງເຊົ້າ |
| | | Noon | ທ່ຽງ/ທ່ຽງຕົງ |
| Afternoon | ຕອນບ່າຍ | 1:00-3:00p.m. | |
| | | 1:00 p.m. | ບ່າຍໂມງໜຶ່ງ |
| | | 1:15 p.m. | ບ່າຍໂມງສິບຫ້າ |
| | | 2:00 p.m. | ບ່າຍສອງໂມງ |
| | | 2:30 p.m. | ບ່າຍສອງໂມງເຄິ່ງ |
| | | 3:00 p.m. | ບ່າຍສາມໂມງ |
| Late afternoon | ຕອນແລງ | 4:00-6:00 p.m. | |
| | | 4:00 p.m. | ສີ່ໂມງແລງ |
| | | 5:00 p.m. | ຫ້າໂມງແລງ |
| | | 5:15 p.m. | ຫ້າໂມງ ສິບຫ້າ ຕອນແລງ |
| | | 6:00 p.m. | ຫົກໂມງແລງ |
| | | 6:30 p.m. | ຫົກໂມງເຄິ່ງ ຕອນແລງ |

| | | | |
|---|--------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| Evening | ຕອນຄ່ຳ | 7:00-11:00p.m. | |
| | | 7:00 p.m. | ເຈັດໂມງແລງ |
| | | 7:15 p.m. | ເຈັດໂມງສິບຫ້າ ຕອນແລງ |
| | | 7:30 p.m. | ເຈັດໂມງເຄິ່ງ ຕອນແລງ |
| | | 8:00 p.m. | ແປດໂມງແລງ |
| | | 9:00 p.m. | ເກົ້າໂມງກາງຄືນ |
| | | 10:00 p.m. | ສິບໂມງ ກາງຄືນ |
| | | 11:00 p.m. | ສິບເອັດໂມງ ກາງຄືນ |
| To express on the dot or sharp, below are the followings: | | | |
| | | sharp | ຕົງ |
| | | 12:00 noon | ທຸ່ງງ |
| | | 8:00 a.m. sharp | ແປດໂມງເຊົ້າ |
| | | 3:00 p.m. sharp | ບ່າຍສາມໂມງ |
| | | 5:00 p.m. sharp | ຫ້າໂມງແລງ |
| | | 11:00 p.m. sharp | ສິບເອັດໂມງ ກາງຄືນ |

Note: ເດີກ: 1 *noun* period of time from midnight to predawn. 2 *noun* predawn, late at night. 3 *adjective* early.

ຄ່ຳ means when the sky starts to darken in the late afternoon until it darkens completely.

DIALOGUE FOR LISTENING

| | |
|---|--|
| <p>ໂທນີ້: ລົດເມໄປຫຼວງພະບາງ ມີໜຶ່ງ ມີຈັກຖ້ວນ?</p> <p>ວຽງຄໍາ: ສີ່ຖ້ວນ</p> <p>ໂທນີ້: ອອກຈັກໂມງ?</p> <p>ວຽງຄໍາ: ຕອນເຊົ້າ ເກົ້າໂມງແລະສິບເອັດໂມງເຄິ່ງ ຕອນບ່າຍສາມໂມງແລະສີ່ໂມງສິບ</p> <p>ໂທນີ້: ໄປຮອດເວລາໃດ/ໄປຮອດຈັກໂມງ?</p> <p>ວຽງຄໍາ: ຕອນເຊົ້າ ຫຼື ຕອນບ່າຍ?</p> <p>ໂທນີ້: ຕອນບ່າຍ</p> <p>ວຽງຄໍາ: ໄປຮອດບ່າຍສາມໂມງແລະຫ້າໂມງ ເຄິ່ງຕອນແລງ</p> <p>ໂທນີ້: ເຮືອບິນເດ ມີຈັກຖ້ວນໄປຫຼວງພະບາງ?</p> <p>ວຽງຄໍາ: ມີນີ້ ມີຖ້ວນດຽວ</p> <p>ໂທນີ້: ອອກແລະໄປຮອດເວລາໃດ?</p> <p>ວຽງຄໍາ: ອອກເກົ້າໂມງເຊົ້າ ແລະ ໄປຮອດສິບໂມງ ສິບສິບຫ້າ</p> <p>ໂທນີ້: ຂ້ອຍໄປເຮືອບິນດີກວ່າ ຄ່າປີ້ໄປກັບເທົ່າໃດ?</p> <p>ວຽງຄໍາ: ປີ້ໄປກັບ ລ້ອຍສາມສິບຫົກໂດລາ. ທ່ານ ຊິເອົາບໍ?</p> <p>ໂທນີ້: ເອີ້ ຂ້ອຍຊິເອົາ. ນີ້ເງິນ ຂອບໃຈຫຼາຍໆ</p> | <p>Tony: How many trips does the bus go up to Luangphrabang?</p> <p>Viengkham: Four trips.</p> <p>Tony: What time does it depart?</p> <p>Viengkham: In the morning at 9 and 11:30 a.m. in the afternoon at 3 and 4:10 p.m.</p> <p>Tony: Arriving when?/Arriving at what time?</p> <p>Viengkham: Morning or afternoon?</p> <p>Tony: Afternoon.</p> <p>Viengkham: It arrives 3:00 p.m. in the afternoon and 5:30 p.m. in the evening.</p> <p>Tony: What about flights? How many trips does it fly up to Luang Prabang?</p> <p>Viengkham: Today, there is one flight.</p> <p>Tony: When does it depart and when does it arrive?</p> <p>Viengkham: It departs 9:00 a.m. and arrives at 10:45 a.m.</p> <p>Tony: I'll go by plane. How much is a roundtrip ticket?</p> <p>Viengkham: Roundtrip ticket is \$136. Do you want it?</p> <p>Tony: Sure I'll take it. Here is the money. Thank you very much.</p> |
|---|--|

EXERCISE

1. Discuss the content of the *Dialogue for Listening*:

ຂະເຈົ້າ ສິນທະນາກ່ຽວກັບຫຍັງ?

ຖ້າເຈົ້າເປັນ ເດວິດ ເຈົ້າ ຊິໄປ ທ່າລາດ ຈັ່ງໃດ?

2. You want to know how often the buses go to Thakek, so you ask:

3. You want to find out how much a round trip ticket for the express bus to Xiangkuang province cost. This is how you ask:

4. You wonder when the next bus will leave for Attapeu Province, and when it will get there, so you ask:

5. You and your friend want to go to Saravanh by express train. You both want to travel with a sleeping space bus, upper deck of second class. This is how you ask to buy the tickets:





ACTIVITY

1. Tell the time in Lao. Discuss various time period about your daily routine with a classmate.
2. Find out if there are buses, trains, or planes going from your city to Phongsaly Province.
3. Ask how long a trip by bus, train, and plane takes between towns or cities.
4. You and your friend want to go to Thadeua. Go to the bus station and
 - make inquiries of how often the buses run
 - find out when the next one leaves and when it gets there
 - ask how much the fares (one way and round trip) cost
 - buy the tickets.
5. Role-play. Play the roles of a customer and a train clerk.
6. Ask an attendant about the arrival of the next bus from Dong Dok.
7. Ask your spouse whether he or she is arriving in the morning or the afternoon.
8. Inquire at a bus station if a certain price is for a roundtrip or one way.

 ການໂທລະສັບຫາເພື່ອນ
(Calling Friends)

OBJECTIVES

Upon completion of this lesson, you will be able to:

-  ask to speak with someone
-  call and leave a message
-  give and take telephone numbers
-  make an appointment.

COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGE: FRAME 1

| | |
|---|--|
| <p>ຈອນ: ອາໂລ! ຂໍເວົ້າກັບ ບຸນຈັນແດ່?</p> <p>ບຸນຈັນ: ກຳລັງເວົ້າ ຂໍໂທດ ນີ້ແມ່ນໃຜເວົ້າ?</p> <p>ຈອນ: ນີ້ແມ່ນ ຈອນ ຈອນສັນ</p> <p>ບຸນຈັນ: ເຮົາ ຈອນ ສະບາຍດີ ເຈົ້າເປັນຈັ່ງໃດ? ເຈົ້າມາຮອດຕອນໃດ?</p> <p>ຈອນ: ຂ້ອຍສະບາຍດີ ຂ້ອຍມາຮອດນີ້ເຊົ້ານີ້.</p> | <p>John: Hello. May I speak with Bounchanh please?</p> <p>Bounchanh: Speaking. Excuse me, who is speaking?</p> <p>John: This is John Johnson</p> <p>Bounchanh: Oh! Hi John! How are you? When did you arrive?</p> <p>John: I am fine. I got here this morning.</p> |
|---|--|

VOCABULARY

| | |
|----------------------|---|
| ຂໍ | to request, to ask for permission, to ask for a favor |
| ຂ້ອຍຂໍ | May I... |
| ລົມ, ເວົ້າ, ປາກ | to speak, say, talk, converse, chat, dialogue |
| ກັບ, ນຳ | with, together with |
| ໄດ້ບໍ່? | a polite request, asking for consent or permission |
| ກຳລັງ | -ing, in the process of...(doing something) |
| ຂໍໂທດ | sorry, excuse me, pardon me |
| ລົມນຳ | talking with |
| ລົມກັບ | speaking with |
| ໃຜ? | Who? |
| ສະບາຍດີ | greeting |
| ສະບາຍ / ຢູ່ຢ່າງສະບາຍ | comfortable |
| ຮອດ | to arrive |
| ໄປ | to go |
| ມາ | to come |
| ໄປຮອດ | to get there |
| ມາຮອດ | to get here |
| ເມື່ອໃດ? | When? (general) |

| | |
|---------|---------------------------|
| ເວລາໃດ? | When? (fixed time) |
| ຍາມໃດ? | When? (unrestricted time) |
| ຕອນໃດ? | When? (unrestricted time) |

SUPPLEMENTAL VOCABULARY

| | |
|---------------|---|
| ມື້ນີ້ | today |
| ມື້ວານນີ້ | yesterday |
| ມື້ອື່ນ | tomorrow |
| ມື້ຊື່ນ | the day before yesterday |
| ວັນຈັນ | Monday |
| ວັນອັງຄານ | Tuesday |
| ວັນພຸດ | Wednesday |
| ວັນພະຫັດ | Thursday |
| ວັນສຸກ | Friday |
| ວັນເສົາ | Saturday |
| ວັນອາທິດ | Sunday |
| ວັນເສົາ-ອາທິດ | weekend |
| ...ໜ້າ | future tense marker like next, future, etc. |
| ອາທິດໜ້າ | next week |
| ເດືອນໜ້າ | next month |
| ປີໜ້າ | next year |
| ມື້ໜ້າ | next day, another day |
| ໂທລະສັບ | telephone |
| ໂທລະສັບຫາ | to telephone someone |
| ໂທຫາ | to telephone someone, to call someone |
| ກັບ...+ | to return...; to go back... |
| ເມືອບ້ານ | to go home, to return home |
| ກັບຄືນ; ກັບໄປ | to return, to go back |
| ກັບຄືນມານີ້ | to return (here) |
| ເພື່ອນ | friend |

ໝູ່ friend
ເມືອເຮືອນ to go home, to return home

SOUND DRILLS

VOWEL AND TONE DRILL

| | | | | | | | | |
|-------|-------|--------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--------|--------|
| ເມືອ | ເຮືອ | ເພື່ອ | ເສືອ | ເມືອ | ເກືອ | ເນື້ອ | ເຫຼືອ | ເມື່ອ |
| ເມືອງ | ເຮືອນ | ເພື່ອນ | ເຊື່ອ | ເມືອງ | ເກືອບ | ເໜືອ | ເລື້ອງ | ເຄື່ອງ |

VOWEL DRILL

| | |
|---------|---------|
| ວັນ | ວານ |
| ກັນ ຂັນ | ການ ຂານ |
| ປັນ ຜັນ | ປານ ຜານ |
| ຈັນ ຕັນ | ຈານ ຕານ |

TONE DRILL: ມາຢູ່ນີ້ ຫຼື ມາຢູ່ພີ່

ຖາມ: ມາຢູ່ໃສ?

ຕອບ: ມາຢູ່ນີ້

ຖາມ: ເຈົ້າມາຢູ່ໃສ?

ຕອບ: ຂ້ອຍມາຢູ່ພີ່

ຖາມ: ມາຢູ່ນີ້ແມ່ນບໍ່?

ຕອບ: ແມ່ນແລ້ວ ມາຢູ່ນີ້

PRACTICE

1. ເຈົ້າເດ?? *How about you?**ລາວເດ? How is someone doing?*

ຖາມ: ເຈົ້າເດ ສະບາຍດີບໍ?

ຕອບ: ຂ້ອຍສະບາຍດີ

ຖາມ: ພໍ່ແມ່ເຈົ້າເດ ສະບາຍດີບໍ?

ຕອບ: ພໍ່ແມ່ຂ້ອຍສະບາຍດີ

ຖາມ: ລູກເມຍເຈົ້າເດ ສະບາຍດີບໍ?

ຕອບ: ລູກ ແລະ ເມຍຂ້ອຍສະບາຍດີ

ຖາມ: ລູກເຈົ້າເດ ສະບາຍດີບໍ?

ຕອບ: ລູກຂ້ອຍສະບາຍດີ

2. ເຈົ້າເດ?ແລ້ວ.....ເດ?

What about you?/ and what about...(someone)?

ຖາມ: ເຈົ້າເດ ສະບາຍດີບໍ?

ຕອບ: ຂ້ອຍສະບາຍດີ

ຖາມ: ພໍ່ ແລະ ແມ່ເຈົ້າເດ ສະບາຍດີບໍ?

ຕອບ: ເພິ່ນສະບາຍດີ?

ຖາມ: ຄອບຄົວເຈົ້າເດ ສະບາຍດີບໍ?

ຕອບ: ຄອບຄົວຂ້ອຍສະບາຍດີ

3. ໃຜ? *Who...?*

ໃຜ ປາກ / ເວົ້າ?

ໃຜ ຊື່ອາຫານ?

ໃຜ ກິນເຂົ້າ?

ໃຜ ມີເງິນ?

ໃຜ ເປັນທະຫານ?

ໃຜ ໄປໂຮງຮຽນ?

ໃຜ ນອນຢູ່ໂຮງແຮມ?

ໃຜ ມາຢ້ຽມຢາມ?

ໃຜ ມີລູກ?

ໃຜ ລອຍນ້ຳເກັ່ງ?

4. ເວລາໃດ? ຍາມໃດ? ເມື່ອໃດ?: *When...?*4.1 Asking questions with ເວລາໃດ? ຍາມໃດ? ເມື່ອໃດ? *When...?*

ເຈົ້າມາຮອດເມືອງລາວເວລາໃດ?

ທ່ານຫຼຸດມາຮອດຍາມໃດ?

ເຈົ້າໄປຮອດໂຮງໝໍເມື່ອໃດ?

ເມຍເຈົ້າກັບຄືນມາເວລາໃດ?

ເຈົ້າໄປເຮັດການຍາມໃດ?

ເຈົ້າເບິ່ງໂທລະທັດເມື່ອໃດ?

ເຈົ້າໄປລອຍນໍ້າເວລາໃດ?

ລາວໄປປະຊຸມຍາມໃດ?

ເຈົ້າຮຽນພາສາລາວເມື່ອໃດ?

ເຈົ້າຮູ້ເວລາໃດ?

4.2 Responding to: ...ເວລາໃດ? ຍາມໃດ? ເມື່ອໃດ?: in the past tense.

ຖາມ: ມາຮອດນີ້ ເວລາໃດ?...ຍາມໃດ?...ເມື່ອໃດ?

ຕອບ: ມາຮອດມື້ຄືນນີ້

ມາຮອດມື້ວານນີ້

ມາຮອດວັນພະຫັດ

ມາຮອດວັນອາທິດ

ມາຮອດອາທິດທີ່ແລ້ວນີ້

ມາຮອດເດືອນແລ້ວນີ້

ມາຮອດປີແລ້ວນີ້

ມາຮອດສາມເດືອນກ່ອນ

ມາຮອດສອງປີກ່ອນ

ມາຮອດເຈັດອາທິດກ່ອນ

Note: ແລ້ວ- completed action, already done (action), thus ປີແລ້ວນີ້ literally means: this year completed or this year transpired or done.

ກ່ອນ - previous, prior to, before. Thus ສອງປີກ່ອນ literally means 2 years before, 2 years previous, 2 years prior.

For the days of the week without these time markers the listener must assume that the speaker knows what tense he is referencing.

4.3 Responding to . ເວລາໃດ? ຍາມໃດ? ເມື່ອໃດ?: in the future tense.

ຖາມ: ຊົມາ ຮອດນີ້ ເວລາໃດ? ຍາມໃດ? ເມື່ອໃດ?

ຕອບ: ຊົມາຮອດ ມື້ອື່ນ

ມື້ຮີ

ວັນອັງຄານ

ວັນເສົາໜ້າ

ເດືອນໜ້າ

ນີ້ ປີໜ້າ

ນີ້ ອາທິດໜ້າ

ນີ້ ວັນສຸກໜ້າ

ນີ້ ວັນພະຫັດໜ້າ

Note: ໜ້າ means future, next...as to time reference. Thus ວັນພະຫັດໜ້າ literally means Thursday next or Thursday future.

Note: For the days of the week without these time markers the listener must assume the the speaker knows what tense he is referencing.

COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGE: FRAME 2

| | |
|---|--|
| <p>ນາງແສງເດືອນ: ຂໍລົມກັບ ທ່ານ ແອັດເວີດ ແດ່?</p> <p>ເລຂານຸກາມ: ຖ້າບິດໜຶ່ງ</p> <p>ແອັດເວີດ: ອາໂລ ນີ້ແມ່ນ ແອັດເວີດ ເວົ້າສາຍ</p> <p>ນາງແສງເດືອນ: ແອັດເວີດ ນີ້ແມ່ນ ແສງເດືອນ ຂ້ອຍຢາກເຊີນເຈົ້າໄປກິນເຂົ້າແລງ. ເຈົ້າມີເວລາຫວ້າງບໍ່?</p> <p>ແອັດເວີດ: ມີ! ມື້ແລງ ນີ້ບໍ່?</p> <p>ນາງແສງເດືອນ: ດີຫລາຍ ຂ້ອຍຊິໄປຕ້ອນເອົາເຈົ້າທຶກໂມງແລງ.</p> <p>ແອັດເວີດ: ພໍ້ກັນຕອນແລງ ລາກ່ອນ</p> | <p>Sengdeuan: May I speak to Edward please?</p> <p>Clerk: One moment, please.</p> <p>Edward: Hello, Edward speaking.</p> <p>Sengdeuan: Edward. This is Sengdeuan. I want to invite you for dinner. Do you have any free time?</p> <p>Edward: How about this evening?</p> <p>Sengdeuan: Perfect. I'll pick you up at 6 o'clock.</p> <p>Edward: See you this evening. Good bye.</p> |
|---|--|

VOCABULARY

| | |
|-------------------|--|
| ຂໍລົມນຳ.../...ກັບ | May I speak with... |
| ຖ້າ | wait |
| ເວົ້າສາຍ | talking on the line, talking on the phone |
| ຖ້າບິດໜຶ່ງ | wait a minute, wait a moment |
| ຢາກ | want to |
| ຢາກໄດ້ | want to get / acquire / gain |
| ເຊີນ / ເຊື້ອເຊີນ | to invite |
| ຊວນ | to ask to engage in a certain activity, to urge, to persuade |
| ກິນເຂົ້າ | to eat (food), to have one's meal |
| ບໍ່ຢູ່ນີ້ | not here, |
| ຕອນແລງ / ມື້ແລງ | evening |
| ...ໄດ້ບໍ່? | How about...? |
| ໄປຕ້ອນ / ໄປຮັບ | to go and pick up (someone) |
| ໄປສົ່ງ | to drop off (someone) |

| | |
|--------------------|---|
| ພາໄປ | to take to somewhere, to escort, to accompany (someone) |
| ນີ້ແມ່ນ | this is |
| ໄປຕ້ອນ/ຮັບເຈົ້າ | to pick you up |
| ພໍດີ / ດີຫລາຍ | just right, good, perfect |
| ພໍ້ກັນ | see each other, meet each other |
| ລາກ່ອນ | good bye, farewell |
| ຢູ່ບໍ? | Is...there? (person) |
| ຝາກຄວາມໄວ້ | leave a message |
| ນີ້ແມ່ນໃຜເວົ້າສາຍ? | Who is speaking? |
| ຊີກັບຄືນມາ | will return |
| ມີພັກ | holiday |
| ມື້ນີ້ | today |
| ມື້ວານນີ້ | yesterday |
| ເຊົ້າວັນເສົາ | Saturday morning |

SUPPLEMENTAL VOCABULARY

| | |
|-----------------------------|---|
| ຕິດຕໍ່ຂ້ອຍທີ່ | contact me at...(location) |
| ໄປສົ່ງ | to send someone off, to give someone a ride |
| ໄປທ່ຽວກິນອາກາດສົດ | to go out for pleasure |
| ໄປເບິ່ງຮູບເງົາ, ໄປເບິ່ງຊິເນ | to go see a movie |
| ໄປລອຍນ້ຳ | to go for a swim |
| ໄປກິນເຂົ້າປ່າ | to go for a picnic |
| ໄປຂີ່ລົດຫຼິ້ນ | to go for a drive |

SOUND DRILLS

VOWEL AND TONE DRILL

| | | | | | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|------|-----|-----|------|------|------|
| ບາງ | ທາງ | ນາງ | ຕ່າງ | ຈາງ | ກາງ | ສ້າງ | ຊ້າງ | ຂ້າງ |
| ລົດ | ຈົດ | ກົດ | ຄົດ | ປົດ | ຝົດ | ສົດ | ໝົດ | ອົດ |

VOWEL DRILL

| | |
|------|-----|
| ເຊີນ | ຊວນ |
| ເກີນ | ກວນ |
| ເດີນ | ດວນ |
| ເຂີນ | ຂວນ |

TONE DRILL

ຜູ້ໃດຊື້?

ນ້ອງຊື້

ນ້ອງຊື້ຫຍັງ?

ນ້ອງຊື້ນ້ຳ

ໃຜຂາຍ?

ແມ່ຄ້າຂາຍ

ທະຫານຍິງຫຍັງ?

ທະຫານຍິງປືນ

ທະຫານຍິງປືນຢູ່ໃສ?

ຍິງຢູ່ຄ້າຍທະຫານ

ໃຜມັກ?

ແມ່ມັກ

ແມ່ມັກຫຍັງ?

ແມ່ມັກສິນ

ໃຜໄດ້ເບິ່ງ?

ພວກເຮົາໄດ້ເບິ່ງ

ພວກເຮົາໄດ້ເບິ່ງຫຍັງ?

ພວກເຮົາໄດ້ເບິ່ງໂທລະພາບ

ຜູ້ໃດສັ່ງ?

ນັກການທູດສັ່ງ

ນັກການທູດສັ່ງຫຍັງ?

ນັກການທູດ ສັ່ງອາຫານ

PRACTICE

1. Review: Using: ຢາກ...ຢາກຈະ...to express a wish or desire to do something.

ຂ້ອຍຢາກໄປປະເທດຈີນ

ຂ້ອຍຢາກປ່ຽນເງິນຢູ່ທະນາຄານ

ເຂົາເຈົ້າຢາກແຕ່ງງານ

ລາວຢາກໄປສວນສາທາລະນະ

ລາວຢາກໄປບຸນທາດຫຼວງປີໜ້າ

2. Inviting someone to do something by using ຊວນ (informal) or ເຊີນ (formal).

ຂ້ອຍຢາກຊວນເຈົ້າໄປຫຼິ້ນບ້ານນອກ

ຂ້ອຍຢາກເຊີນເຈົ້າໄປງານກິນລ້ຽງ

ຂ້ອຍຢາກຊວນເຈົ້າໄປເບິ່ງຊີເນມາ

ພວກເຮົາຢາກເຊີນທ່ານ ໄປເບິ່ງລະເບີດທີ່ຍັງບໍ່ແຕກຢູ່ລາວ

ຂະເຈົ້າຢາກເຊີນທ່ານ ໄປກ່າວຄຳປາໄສຢູ່ສະຖາບັນຝັກອົບຮົມ

3. Planning to do something at a future time: ຊິ... / ຈະ...

ບ່າຍໂມງໜຶ່ງ ຂ້ອຍຊິໄປໂຮງໝໍ

ທ້າໂມງແລງ ຂ້ອຍຈະໄປຕ້ອນເຈົ້າ

ມື້ອື່ນເຊົ້າ ຂ້ອຍຊິອອກບ້ານໄປເວລາທ້າໂມງເຄິ່ງ

ມື້ແລງ ຂ້ອຍຈະກັບເມືອບ້ານ

4. ຄັນຊັ້ນ...: *In that case*

ຄັນຊັ້ນ ຂ້ອຍຊິໄປຮັບເຈົ້າ

ຄັນຊັ້ນ ຂ້ອຍຈະຢູ່ເປັນໂສດ

ຄັນຊັ້ນ ຂ້ອຍຊິເຊົ່າເຮືອນຢູ່

ຄັນຊັ້ນ ຂ້ອຍຊິຖ້າຢູ່ນີ້

COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGE: FRAME 3

| | |
|---|---|
| <p>ເດວິດ: ອາໂລ! ຄຳຈັນ ຢູ່ບໍ່?</p> <p>ເລຂານຸການ: ຢູ່ ແຕ່ວ່າ ລາວກຳລັງເຂົ້າປະຊຸມຢູ່. ທ່ານຢາກຈະສົ່ງຄວາມໄວ້ບໍ່?</p> <p>ເດວິດ: ເຈົ້າ ນີ້ແມ່ນ ເດວິດ. ຊ່ອຍບອກ ຄຳຈັນ ໃຫ້ ຂ້ອຍແດ່ວ່າ ໃຫ້ລາວມາຕ້ອນຂ້ອຍ ເວລາຫ້າໂມງ ແລງຢູ່ສຳນັກງານຂ້ອຍ</p> <p>ເລຂານຸການ: ໄດ້ ບໍ່ເປັນຫຍັງ. ຂໍໂທດ ເບີໂທລະສັບ ທ່ານເບີຫຍັງ?</p> <p>ເດວິດ: ເບີ ຫົກ ແປດ ຫ້າ ສາມ ສອງ ສີ່ ສອງ</p> <p>ເລຂານຸການ: ມີຫຍັງອີກບໍ່?</p> <p>ເດວິດ: ບໍ່ ຂອບໃຈຫຼາຍໆ</p> | <p>David: Hello, is Khamchan there?</p> <p>Secretary: She is in a meeting. Would you like to leave a message?</p> <p>David: Yes, this is David Lee. Could you please tell Khamchanh to pick me up at my office at 5:00 PM.</p> <p>Secretary: Sure. Excuse me what's your phone number?</p> <p>David: Number 685 3242</p> <p>Secretary: Anything else?</p> <p>David: No, thank you very much.</p> |
|---|---|

VOCABULARY

| | |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------|
| ຢູ່ທີ່ | at |
| ...ຢູ່ບໍ່? | Is...there? |
| ກອງປະຊຸມ | meeting |
| ຢາກສົ່ງຄວາມໄວ້ບໍ່? | Would you like to leave a message? |
| ຊ່ອຍ.../ຊ່ວຍ | Would you kindly? Could you please? |
| ບອກ | to tell, to advise, to notify |
| ໃຫ້ | to let, to permit, for |
| ກຳລັງ | -ing, about to |
| ຊ່ອຍບອກ | kindly tell |
| ຢູ່ສຳນັກງານ | at the workplace, at the office |
| ແຕ່ວ່າ | but |
| ນີ້ແມ່ນ | this is |

| | |
|--------------|----------------------------------|
| ມາຕ້ອນຂ້ອຍ | come pick me up |
| ຕອນແລງ | evening |
| ຂໍລົມກັບ | could I talk to |
| ບໍ່ໄດ້ຢູ່ນີ້ | is not here |
| ຍັງບໍ່ຮອດ | has not arrived; has not reached |
| ເວົ້າກັບ | talking with |
| ລົມກັບ | speaking with |
| ມີຫຍັງອີກບໍ? | Anything else? |

SUPPLEMENTAL VOCABULARY

| | |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------|
| ໂທຜິດນໍ້າເບີ / ເລກ | call wrong number |
| ຕໍ່ຫ້ອງ...ໄດ້ບໍ? | Could you connect me to room...? |
| ໂທຜິດ | misdial |
| ສາຍບໍ່ຫວ່າງ, ສາຍຄາຍູ່ | the line is busy |
| ເວົ້າແຮງໆແດ່ | speak louder |
| ບໍ່ໄດ້ຍິນ | cannot hear |

SOUND DRILLS

| | | | | | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| ຊຸມ | ຄຸມ | ກຸມ | ກຸ້ມ | ນຸ່ມ | ຊຸ່ມ | ກຸ່ມ | ຄຸ້ມ | ກຸ່ມ |
| ກັບ | ປັບ | ຊັບ | ນັບ | ຄັບ | ຂັບ | ທັບ | ລັບ | ຮັບ |

CONSONANT DRILL: ທ ຄ

1. ເທິງຄັນລົດ
2. ທາງຄົນທຽວ
3. ທົ່ງນາຍາມຄໍ່າ
4. ທາງໄປໜອງຄາຍ

TONE DRILL

ເຮົາມີກອງ

ເຂົາມີກ້ອງ

PRACTICE

1. Asking to speak with someone on the phone.

ຂໍເວົ້າກັບ ນາງວຽງ ແດ່ຈັກໜ້ອຍໄດ້ບໍ່?

ຂໍເວົ້າກັບ ທ້າວຕຸ້ຍ ແດ່ຈັກໜ້ອຍໄດ້ບໍ່?

ຂໍລົມກັບ ທ່ານທູດ ແດ່ຈັກໜ້ອຍໄດ້ບໍ່?

ຂໍລົມກັບ ທ່ານຈິມ ແດ່ຈັກໜ້ອຍໄດ້ບໍ່?

2. Further practice with . . . ຢູ່ບໍ່?: Is . . . there?

ນາງ ຈຳປາ ຢູ່ບໍ່?

ທ້າວ ຄຳສິງ ຢູ່ບໍ່?

ທ່ານທູດ ຢູ່ບໍ່?

ນາງ ສອນ ຢູ່ບໍ່?

ອາຈານ ແກ້ວ ຢູ່ບໍ່?

ທ້າວ ຈ່ອຍ ຢູ່ບໍ່?

ປ້າ ແພງດີ ຢູ່ບໍ່?

ລຸງແອ ຢູ່ບໍ່?

1. Answering the phone.

ຂໍລົມກັບ ນາງ ວຽງແກ້ວແດ່?

ຕອບ: ກຳລັງເວົ້າ

ຂໍລົມກັບ ທ້າວ ວິໄລແດ່?

ຕອບ: ລາວບໍ່ຢູ່

ຂໍລົມກັບ ທ່ານ ພິເຕີແດ່?

ຕອບ: ຖ້າບິດນຶ່ງ

ຂໍລົມກັບ ຫົວໜ້າພະແນກແດ່?

ຕອບ: ໂທມາມື້ອື່ນໄດ້ບໍ່?

ຂໍລົມກັບ ທ່ານໝໍແດ່?

ຕອບ: ທ່ານໝໍບໍ່ຢູ່ ໂທມາຕອນບ່າຍໄດ້ບໍ່?

2. Asking if you could leave a message...ສັ່ງຄວາມໄດ້ບໍ່? ຝາກຄວາມໄດ້ບໍ່?

ຂ້ອຍ(ຂໍ)ຝາກຂໍຄວາມໄວ້ໄດ້ບໍ່?

ຂ້ອຍ(ຂໍ)ສັ່ງຄວາມໄວ້ໃຫ້ ທ້າວບຸນໄດ້ບໍ່?

ຂ້ອຍ(ຂໍ)ຝາກຄວາມໄວ້ໃຫ້ ແມ່ໄດ້ບໍ່?

ຂ້ອຍ(ຂໍ)ສັ່ງຄວາມໄວ້ໃຫ້ ນາງແບດດີໄດ້ບໍ່?

ຂ້ອຍ(ຂໍ)ຝາກຄວາມໄວ້ໃຫ້ ອ້າຍຂ້ອຍໄດ້ບໍ່?

3. When dialing a wrong number.

ຂໍໂທດ (ທ່ານ) ຂ້ອຍໂທຜິດ

ຂໍໂທດ (ທ່ານ) ຂ້ອຍຕໍ່ສາຍຜິດ

4. Asking for and giving a phone number.

4.1 Asking for a telephone number....ເບີຫຍັງ?

ໂທລະສັບໂຮງແຮມລ້ານຊ້າງເບີຫຍັງ?

ໂທລະສັບບ້ານນາງທູພັນເບີຫຍັງ?

ໂທລະສັບສະຖານທູດອີຕາລີເບີຫຍັງ?

ໂທລະສັບທ່ານທູດເບີຫຍັງ?

ໂທລະສັບໂຮງໝໍເບີຫຍັງ?

ໂທລະສັບສະໂມສອນອອກກຳລັງເບີຫຍັງ?

ໂທລະສັບບ້ານເຈົ້າເບີຫຍັງ?

ໂທລະສັບສຳນັກງານເຈົ້າເບີຫຍັງ?

4.2 Giving a phone number: Like English, the phone number goes by single digit.

| | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------|
| ເບີໂທລະສັບຮ້ານອາຫານແມ່ນ... | (929) 544 - 6793 |
| ເບີໂທລະສັບສໍານັກງານຂ້ອຍແມ່ນ... | (645) 389 - 9372 |
| ເບີໂທລະສັບທະນະຄານແມ່ນ... | (472) 688 - 9347 |
| ເບີໂທລະສັບບ້ານທ່ານທູດແມ່ນ... | (702) 994 - 0042 |
| ເບີໂທລະສັບພະແນກຂົນສົ່ງແມ່ນ... | (571) 347 - 1169 |
| ເບີໂທລະສັບອ້າຍຂ້ອຍແມ່ນ... | 011 33 1 6066 6843 |

5. Using the structure ກຳລັງ...+ verb...ຢູ່ to indicate action which is taking place.

ລາວກຳລັງເວົ້າໂທລະສັບຢູ່
 ນັກຮຽນກຳລັງຮຽນພາສາລາວຢູ່
 ທ່ານທູດກຳລັງເຂົ້າປະຊຸມຢູ່
 ທ້າວສີຈັນກຳລັງໄຖນາຢູ່
 ພໍ່ຄົວກຳລັງຄົວກິນຢູ່
 ຂ້ອຍກຳລັງໃຊ້ຄອມພິວເຕີຢູ່
 ເດັກນ້ອຍກຳລັງເບິ່ງໂທລະພາບຢູ່

6. Review: Requesting someone to do something...ຊ່ອຍ...ແດ່ Could you kindly

ຊ່ອຍບອກລາວມາຕ້ອນເອົາຂ້ອຍຢູ່ສໍານັກງານແດ່?
 ຊ່ອຍບອກລາວໂທຫາຂ້ອຍແດ່?
 ຊ່ອຍສົ່ງຄວາມໃຫ້ທ່ານ ແອັດດີ ແດ່?

ຊ່ວຍບອກນາຍຄູວ່າ ນັກຮຽນບໍ່ມາ ແດ່?

ຊ່ວຍບອກລາວໂທລະສັບຫານາຍລາວແດ່?

ຊ່ວຍບອກຫົວໜ້າພະແນກແດ່?

ຊ່ວຍຝາກຄວາມໃຫ້ທ່ານທູດແດ່?

ຊ່ວຍບອກລາວວ່າ ຂ້ອຍຊິໂທມາໃໝ່ແດ່?

ຊ່ວຍບອກລາວວ່າ ຂ້ອຍກຳລັງຖ້າຢູ່ແດ່?

ຊ່ວຍບອກລາວວ່າ ຂ້ອຍເຮັດວຽກໝົດມື້ແດ່?

ຊ່ວຍບອກລາວວ່າ ຂ້ອຍໄປບໍ່ໄດ້ແດ່?

DIALOGUE FOR LISTENING

| | |
|--|--|
| <p>ເດວິດ: ອາໂລ ຂໍລົມກັບ ຄຳຈັນ ໄດ້ບໍ່?</p> <p>ຄຳຈັນ: ກຳລັງເວົ້າ ນີ້ແມ່ນໃຜນັ້ນ?</p> <p>ເດວິດ: ສະບາຍດີ ຄຳຈັນ! ນີ້ແມ່ນ ເດວິດລີ</p> <p>ຄຳຈັນ: ໂອ ເດວິດ ສະບາຍດີ. ເຈົ້າມາຮອດ ເວລາໃດ?</p> <p>ເດວິດ: ຂ້ອຍມາຮອດ ມື້ຄືນນີ້</p> <p>ຄຳຈັນ: ເຈົ້າ ເປັນຈັ່ງໃດ?</p> <p>ເດວິດ: ສະບາຍດີ, ເຈົ້າເດ?</p> <p>ຄຳຈັນ: ຂ້ອຍ ສະບາຍດີຄືກັນ. ເຈົ້າ ຊຶ່ງມີດົນ ປານໃດ?</p> <p>ເດວິດ: ສອງ-ສາມມື້. ແລ້ວຂ້ອຍ ຊິໄປແຂວງ ຊຽງຂວາງ ອາທິດໜ້າ</p> <p>ຄຳຈັນ: ດີຫຼາຍ! ແຂວງຊຽງຂວາງງາມຫຼາຍ ເຈົ້າພັກຢູ່ໃສ?</p> <p>ເດວິດ: ຢູ່ໂຮງແຮມດອນຈັນ</p> <p>ຄຳຈັນ: ເຈົ້າມີເວລາຫວັງບໍ່? ຂ້ອຍຢາກຊວນ ເຈົ້າໄປກິນເຂົ້າແລງ</p> <p>ເດວິດ: ດີຫຼາຍ, ມື້ອື່ນໄດ້ບໍ່?</p> <p>ຄຳຈັນ: ພໍດີ ຂ້ອຍຊິໄປຮັບເຈົ້າມື້ອື່ນ ຫົກໂມງ ແລງຢູ່ໂຮງແຮມ</p> <p>ເດວິດ: ຂອບໃຈຫຼາຍໆ</p> <p>ຄຳຈັນ: ຖ້າເຈົ້າຕ້ອງການຫຍັງ ຫຼື ມີຫຍັງ ບອກຂ້ອຍເດີ້. ລາກ່ອນ</p> <p>ເດວິດ: ພໍ້ກັນໃໝ່</p> | <p>David: Hello. Could I please speak with Khamchanh?</p> <p>Khamchanh: Speaking. Who is speaking, please?</p> <p>David: Hi Khamchan. It's me David Lee.</p> <p>Khamchanh: Oh, Hello David. When did you arrive?</p> <p>David: Last night</p> <p>Khamchanh: How are you?</p> <p>David: Very well. How about you?</p> <p>Khamchanh: I'm fine too. Are you going to be here long?</p> <p>David: For a couple of days then I will go to Xiengkhuang next week.</p> <p>Khamchanh: Good. It's beautiful there. Where are you staying?</p> <p>David: At Donchan Hotel.</p> <p>Khamchanh: When are you going to have a free time? I'd like to take you to dinner.</p> <p>David: Great. How about tomorrow?</p> <p>Khamchanh: Perfect. I'll pick you up at 6 p.m. at the hotel.</p> <p>David: Thanks a lot.</p> <p>Khamchanh: If you need anything or something comes up, let me know OK? Bye.</p> <p>David: See you again.</p> |
|--|--|

EXERCISE

1. Discuss the content of the *Dialogue for Listening* in Lao regarding:

ເດວິດ ຢູ່ໃສ?

ລາວມາຮອດເວລາໃດ?

ລາວຊື່ຢູ່ດົນປານໃດ?

ນາງ ຄໍາຈັນ ຢາກເຮັດຫຍັງ?

2. Tell your friend your both phone numbers at home and at work:
-

3. You want to speak to David Lee on the phone, this is how you ask:
-

4. This is how you ask if you could leave a message:
-

5. Tell your friend that you arrived last week and next Monday you will be leaving for Vangvieng.
-


ACTIVITY

1. Role-play: You are now in Laos. Call your friend to say hello. Tell him how and what you have been doing.

2. You call your friend at home but he is not there. Leave a message which includes:





- your name

- where you are staying
 - your phone number, and extension if applicable
 - when you can be reached at that number.
3. Call up a friend, set up the time and place where you will meet.
 4. Call the operator to find out the phone number of:
 - the airport
 - the train station
 - the police station
 - your friend, indicating his or her name, place of work and address.
 5. You call your friend, but you think you've gotten the wrong number. Apologize and ask whether 387-5290 is the number you have reached.
 6. Call a hotel front desk and ask for Mr Mc Dermott in RM 1204.
 7. Call your assistant and ask for the phone number of the finance section.
 8. Call the front desk to see if you have any messages.
 9. Identify yourself and ask to speak to Wendy in HR.
 10. Call your spouse at home and see if your parents have called.

 ທິດທາງ ແລະ ການຂົນສົ່ງ
(Directions and Transportation)

OBJECTIVES

Upon completion of this lesson, you will be able to:

-  ask for directions
-  follow directions
-  give directions
-  use appropriate prepositions

COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGE: FRAME 1

Directions to a hotel

| | |
|---|--|
| <p>ໂຮເບີດ: ຄຸ້ມເຂດນີ້ ມີໂຮງແຮມ ບໍ່?</p> | <p>Robert: Are there any hotels in this area?</p> |
| <p>ສີຈັນ: ມີ, ມີໂຮງແຮມນຶ່ງຢູ່ຖະໜົນເຈົ້າຟ້າງຸ່ມ.</p> | <p>Sichanh: Yes, there is one on Chao Fa Ngoum Road.</p> |
| <p>ໂຮເບີດ: ຖະໜົນເຈົ້າຟ້າງຸ່ມ ຢູ່ໃສ?</p> | <p>Robert: Where is Chao Fa Ngoum Road?</p> |
| <p>ສີຈັນ: ໂຮງແຮມຢູ່ບໍ່ໄກຈາກນີ້. ມີແຕ່ ທ່ານ ໄປຊື່ໆ ທາງນີ້, ແລ້ວລ້ວງຊ້າຍຢູ່ໄຟແດງນັ້ນ, ເຈົ້າຊິເຫັນໂຮງແຮມຫຼັງໃຫຍ່ໆ.</p> | <p>Sichanh: It is not far from here. You just go straight this way. Then, turn left at the traffic light, you will see a big hotel.</p> |
| <p>ໂຮເບີດ: ໂຮງແຮມນັ້ນ ຊື່ຫຍັງ?</p> <p>ສີຈັນ: ໂຮງແຮມ ລ້ານຊ້າງ.</p> | <p>Robert: What is the name of the hotel?</p> <p>Sichanh: Lanexang Hotel.</p> |
| <p>ໂຮເບີດ: ຂອບໃຈຫຼາຍໆ.</p> <p>ສີຈັນ: ບໍ່ເປັນຫຍັງ.</p> | <p>Robert: Thank you very much.</p> <p>Sichanh: You're welcome.</p> |

VOCABULARY

| | |
|-------------------|--|
| ຄຸ້ມເຂດ | area, neighborhood |
| ຖະໜົນ | road, street |
| ຖະໜົນເຈົ້າຟ້າງຸ່ມ | Chao Fa Ngoum Road |
| ໂຮງແຮມ | hotel |
| ຫຼັງ | classifier for houses and buildings |
| ໄຟແດງ | traffic light |
| ຢູ່ໃສ? | Where? |
| ໄປຊື່ໆ | go straight |
| ແລ້ວ | then (when using before the clause/sentence) |
| ແລ້ວລ້ວງ | then turn |
| ລ້ວງຊ້າຍ | turn left |
| ລ້ວງຂວາ | turn right |

ທິດທັງແປດ Directions

| | |
|---------------------|-----------|
| ທິດເໜືອ | North |
| ທິດໃຕ້ | South |
| ທິດຕາເວັນອອກ | East |
| ທິດຕາເວັນຕົກ | West |
| ທິດຕາເວັນອອກສຽງເໜືອ | Northeast |
| ທິດຕາເວັນອອກສຽງໃຕ້ | Southeast |
| ທິດຕາເວັນຕົກສຽງເໜືອ | Northwest |
| ທິດຕາເວັນຕົກສຽງໃຕ້ | Southwest |

ຄຳບຸບພະບົດ (ຄຳຢູ່ຕໍ່ໜ້າຄຳນາມ) Prepositions

| | |
|------------------|------------------------------|
| ທີ່ | at, in , on |
| ໃນ | in, inside |
| ທາງນອກ | out, outside |
| ໄກ, ຫ່າງ | far, far from |
| ໃກ້ | near, closed by |
| ໄປຫາ | to, toward |
| ໄປຊື່ | straight on |
| ທາງໜ້າ | front, in front |
| ຂ້າງກັບ | next to, side |
| ກົງກັນຂ້າມ | opposite of |
| ທາງຫຼັງ | behind, in the back, rear |
| ລະຫວ່າງ | between, in between |
| ຊ້າຍ, ເບື້ອງຊ້າຍ | left, left of |
| ຂວາ, ເບື້ອງຂວາ | right, right of |
| ກາງ, ທາງກາງ | middle, in the middle/center |

SOUND DRILLS

VOWEL AND TONE DRILLS

| | | | | | | | | |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|------|-----|
| ແກກ | ແຕກ | ແຍກ | ແລກ | ແທກ | ແຈກ | ແປກ | ແຫຼກ | ແປກ |
| ຂານ | ຕານ | ຍານ | ລານ | ທານ | ຈານ | ບານ | ຫຼານ | ປານ |

CONSONANT DRILL

| | |
|------|------|
| ກ | ຄ |
| ກາ | ຄາ |
| ເກົາ | ເຄົາ |
| ໄກ | ໄຄ |

TONE DRILL

1. ນາຍຄູຂ້ອຍ ຢູ່ໃກ້ກັບ ສະຖານທູດສະຫະລັດ.
2. ຂ້ອຍຢູ່ບໍ່ໄກຈາກໂຮງການ, ເຈົ້າເດ ເຈົ້າຢູ່ໃສ?
3. ພໍ່ຂ້ອຍແລ່ນລົດໄປຕະຫຼາດເຊົ້າ ມື້ລະຫ້າຖ້ວນ.
4. ລາວຂັບລົດທ່ຽວຊົມທຽວທັດ ທາງທິດຕາເວັນຕົກ.
5. ໂຮງຮຽນລູກຊາຍຂ້ອຍ ຢູ່ຕໍ່ໜ້າກັບໂຮງພໍ່ ມະໂຫສົດ.
6. ຄົວລົດເມໂດຍສານ ໄປປາກເຊ ຢູ່ຂ້າງກັບສະຖານີຕໍາຫຼວດ.

PRACTICE

1. Asking for location with...ຢູ່ໃສ? *Where is...?*

ຖະໜົນສາຍລົມ ຢູ່ໃສ?

ຖະໜົນສາມແສນໄທ ຢູ່ໃສ?

ວັດສີເມືອງ ຢູ່ໃສ?

ໂຮງແຮມລ້ານຊ້າງ ຢູ່ໃສ?
 ຮ້ານແປງລົດ ຢູ່ໃສ?
 ຕະຫຼາດທາດຫຼວງ ຢູ່ໃສ?
 ຮ້ານຂາຍຢາ ຢູ່ໃສ?
 ຄ້າຍທະຫານ ຢູ່ໃສ?

To respond to these questions.

ຖາມ: ຮ້ານອາຫານຈີນຢູ່ໃສ?
 ຕອບ: ຢູ່ໃກ້ສະໜາມບິນວັດໄຕ.

ຖາມ: ຮ້ານຂາຍລົດໂຕໂຍຕາຢູ່ໃສ?
 ຕອບ: ຢູ່ຕໍ່ໜ້າວັດສີສະເກດ.

ຖາມ: ສະຖານທູດອາເມລິກາຢູ່ໃສ?
 ຕອບ: ຢູ່ຄຸ້ມທາດດຳ.

ຖາມ: ປະຕູໄຊຢູ່ໃສ?
 ຕອບ: ຢູ່ຖະໜົນລ້ານຊ້າງ.

ຖາມ: ບ້ານເຈົ້າຢູ່ໃສ?
 ຕອບ: ຢູ່ບ້ານໂພນສະອາດ.

2. Giving and following directions.

2.1 Turn left...ລ້ງວຊ້າຍ Turn right...ລ້ງວຂວາ

2.2 Go straight and then turn left/ right

| | |
|-----------------------------|--|
| ໄປຊື່ໆ ແລ້ວລ້ງວຊ້າຍຢູ່ໄຟແດງ | Go straight, then turn left at the traffic light. |
| ຕົງໄປ ແລ້ວລ້ງວຂວາທີ່ໄຟແດງ | Go straight, then turn right at the traffic light. |
| ໄປຊື່ໆ ຜ່ານໄຟແດງທີ 1 | Go straight, pass the first traffic light, and |
| ແລ້ວລ້ງວຊ້າຍຢູ່ໄຟແດງທີ 2 | then turn left at the second traffic light. |

2.3 Go straight and then turn at a certain point.

ໄປຊື່ໆ ແລ້ວລ້ຽວຊ້າຍຢູ່ໄຟແດງທີສອງ.
 ຕົງໄປ ແລ້ວລ້ຽວຂວາຢູ່ໂຮງແຮມລ້ານຊ້າງ.
 ໄປຊື່ໆ ແລ້ວລ້ຽວຊ້າຍຢູ່ວັດມີໄຊ.
 ຕົງໄປ ແລ້ວລ້ຽວຂວາຢູ່ໂຮງການໄປສະນີ.
 ໄປຊື່ໆ ແລ້ວລ້ຽວຊ້າຍຢູ່ຕະຫຼາດໂພນເຄັງ.
 ຕົງໄປ ແລ້ວລ້ຽວຂວາຢູ່ສະຖານີລົດເມ.

2.4 Additional practice.

ລ້ຽວຂວາ ແລ້ວໄປຊື່ໆ

Turn right and then go straight.

ລ້ຽວຊ້າຍ ແລ້ວໄປຊື່ໆ

Turn left and then go straight.

ລ້ຽວຊ້າຍ ແລ້ວລ້ຽວຂວາ

Turn left and then turn right.

ລ້ຽວຂວາຢູ່ສີ່ແຍກ ແລ້ວໄປຊື່ໆ

Turn right at the intersection and then go straight.

ໄປຊື່ໆ ແລ້ວລ້ຽວຂວາຢູ່ຖະໜົນສີເມືອງ

Go straight then turn right at Simuang Rd.

ຕົງໄປ ແລ້ວລ້ຽວຊ້າຍຢູ່ໄຟແດງທີສາມ

Go straight then turn left at the third traffic light.

COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGE: FRAME 2

Direction to the police station

| | |
|---|--|
| ແນນຊີ: ຢູ່ເຂດນີ້ ມີສະຖານີຕໍາຫຼວດ ບໍ? | Nancy: Is there a police station in the area? |
| ບຸນມີ : ມີ ແລະ ແຕ່ວ່າມັນຢູ່ໄກຈາກນີ້ຫຼາຍ. | Boonmy: Yes, it is very far from here. |
| ແນນຊີ: ຢູ່ໃສ? ຂ້ອຍຢ່າງໄປເຖິງ ບໍ? | Nancy: Where? Can I walk there? |
| ບຸນມີ: ຢູ່ທິດຕາເວັນອອກສຽງເໜືອຈາກນີ້. ຢູ່ໃກ້ກັບ ໂຮງຮຽນສິນໄຊ. ຢ່າງໄປກໍຮອດ ແຕ່ວ່າຕ້ອງໃຊ້ເວລາປະມານ ນຶ່ງຊົ່ວໂມງ. | Boonmy: From here, it is in the northeast. It is next to Sinxay School. You can walk, but it will take you around one hour to get there. |
| ແນນຊີ: ຄັນຊັ້ນ ຂ້ອຍຈະໄປທາງລົດ! ຄ່າລົດເທົ່າໃດ? ເຈົ້າຮູ້ບໍ? | Nancy: In that case, I will take the public transportation. How much is the fare? Do you know? |
| ບຸນມີ: ລົດເມ 5.000 ກີບ. ລົດຕັກຊີ 10.000 ກີບ ແລະ ລົດ ຕຸກຕຸກ 7.000 ກີບ. | Boonmy: By bus, it is 5,000 kips. Taxi, it's 10,000 kips and by Tooktook, it's 7,000 kips. |
| ແນນຊີ: ຂອບໃຈຫຼາຍເດີ! ບຸນມີ: ດ້ວຍຄວາມຍິນດີ! | Nancy: Thank you very much. Boonmy: With pleasure. |

VOCABULARY

| | |
|--------------------|-----------------------|
| ສະຖານີຕໍາຫຼວດ | police station |
| ຢ່າງ | to walk |
| ໄປຮອດ | to arrive |
| ມາຮອດ | to arrive |
| ປະມານ | around, approximate |
| ການຂົນສົ່ງສາທາລະນະ | public transportation |
| ຄ່າໂດຍສານ | fare |
| ກີບ | kip, Lao currency |
| ລົດເມ | bus |
| ລົດປະຈໍາທາງ | bus |

| | |
|-------------|--------------------------------|
| ລົດຕັກຊີ | taxi |
| ລົດຕຸກຕຸກ | tooktook (tri-wheeled vehicle) |
| ລົດສາມລໍ້ | trishaw |
| ພາສີ | tax, duty |
| ອາກອນ | tax, duty |
| ພັກຄ້າງຄືນ | stay overnight |
| ບໍລິການ | services |
| ເຊົ່າ | to rent |
| ຄ່າເຊົ່າ | the rent |
| ເຊົ່າລົດ | to rent a car |
| ເໝາລົດຕັກຊີ | hire a taxi |

PRACTICE

1. ຖາມ ຄ່າໂດຍສານ Ask about the fare to

ຄ່າລົດຕັກຊີໄປ ທ່າເດືອນ ເທົ່າໃດ?
 ຄ່າສາມລໍ້ໄປ ຕະຫຼາດເຊົ່າ ເທົ່າໃດ?
 ຄ່າເຮືອບິນໄປ ເມືອງຫຼວງພະບາງ ເທົ່າໃດ?
 ຄ່າເຮືອໄປ ຖ້ຳຕິ່ງ ເທົ່າໃດ?
 ຄ່າເມໄປ ເມືອງປາກເຊ ເທົ່າໃດ?

2. ຈອງ ປີ້ ລົດ, ເຮືອບິນ Make a reservation for.....

ຂ້ອຍຢາກຈອງ ປີ້ລົດເມ ໄປ ເມືອງປາກຊັນ 1 ປີ້.
 ລາວຢາກຈອງ ປີ້ເຮືອບິນໄປ-ກັບ ໄປ ເມືອງຫ້ວຍຊາຍ 2 ປີ້.
 ທ່ານ ຈອນ ຢາກຈອງປີ້ເຮືອ ໄປທ່ຽວ ຖ້ຳຕິ່ງ 4 ປີ້.
 ດາຣາຢາກ ຂອງປີ້ລົດໄຟ ໄປ ເມືອງບອສຕັນ 3 ປີ້.
 ທ່ານນາງ ແມຣີ ຢາກຈອງປີ້ລົດໄຟໃຕ້ດິນ ໄປ ເມືອງບໍຕິມໍຣ໌.

SOUND DRILLS

VOWEL AND TONE DRILLS

| | | | | | | | | |
|-----|-----|------|------|------|-----|------|-----|------|
| ຄົນ | ປົນ | ອົນ | ຕົ້ນ | ຫົນ | ຍົນ | ພົ້ນ | ຟົນ | ຜົນ |
| ຄາງ | ປາງ | ອ້າງ | ຕາງ | ທາງ | ຢາງ | ພາງ | ຟາງ | ຝາງ |
| ຄາຍ | ປາຍ | ອ້າຍ | ຕ່າຍ | ທ້າຍ | ຢາຍ | ພາຍ | ຟາຍ | ຝ້າຍ |

TONE DRILL

| | |
|-----|------|
| ຊາຍ | ຊ້າຍ |
| ປາຍ | ປ້າຍ |
| ປາ | ປ້າ |

VOWEL AND TONE DRILL

| | |
|-----|------|
| ຮອງ | ຮ້ອງ |
| ຄອງ | ຄ້ອງ |
| ມາ | ມ້າ |

PRACTICE

1. Asking about rent/cost of service per_____ ລະເທົ່າໃດ/ລະທໍ່ໃດ?

ຄ່າຫ້ອງຄົນລະເທົ່າໃດ?

ຄ່າໂຮງແຮມມື້ລະເທົ່າໃດ?

ຄ່າເຮືອນພັກຊົ່ວຄາວອາທິດລະເທົ່າໃດ?

ຄ່າເຊົ່າລົດມື້ລະເທົ່າໃດ?

ຄ່າຫ້ອງທີ່ມີພັດລົມຄົນລະເທົ່າໃດ?

ຄ່າເຊົ່າເຮືອນເດືອນລະເທົ່າໃດ?

2. Respond by specifying the room and the cost.

ຖາມ: ຫ້ອງທີ່ມີ ອາຍເຢັນ ຄົນລະເທົ່າໃດ?

ຕອບ: ຄົນລະ ຫົກແສນກີບ.

ຖາມ: ຫ້ອງທຳມະດາ ຄືນລະເທົ່າໃດ?

ຕອບ: ຄືນລະ ສີ່ແສນກີບ.

ຖາມ: ຫ້ອງພິເສດ ຄືນລະເທົ່າໃດ?

ຕອບ: ຄືນລະ ເກົ້າແສນກີບ.

ຖາມ: ຫ້ອງຕຽງຄູ່ ຄືນລະເທົ່າໃດ?

ຕອບ: ຄືນລະ ແປດຮ້ອຍພັນກີບ.

ຖາມ: ຫ້ອງອາຍເຢັນ ອາທິດລະເທົ່າໃດ?

ຕອບ: ອາທິດລະ ສອງລ້ານຫ້າແສນກີບ.

SOUND DRILLS

VOWEL AND TONE DRILLS

| | | | | | | | | |
|------|------|-----|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| ສ້າງ | ຂ້າງ | ວາງ | ຍ່າງ | ທາງ | ຊ້າງ | ຕ່າງ | ຄ້າງ | ມ້າງ |
| ສານ | ຂານ | ວານ | ຍານ | ທ່ານ | ຊານ | ຕ້ານ | ຄານ | ມານ |

TONE DRILL

VOWEL DRILL

| | |
|------|-----|
| High | Low |
|------|-----|

ໝິດ ມິດ
 ຫຍິດ ຍິດ
 ຫິດ ຮິດ

| | |
|-----|-----|
| ປອກ | ປາກ |
|-----|-----|

ບອກ ຈາກ
 ຊອກ ສາກ
 ສອກ ນາກ

PRACTICE

1. Time to check out:

ຖາມ: ເຊັ່ນອອກຈັກໂມງ? ເຊັ່ນອອກຈັກໂມງ?

ຕອບ: ເຊັ່ນອອກ ເວລາ11:00 ໂມງເຊົ້າ.

ເຊັກອອກ ເວລາ ກ່ອນ 12:00 ໂມງທ່ຽງ.
 ເຊັນອອກ ກ່ອນ 12:00 ໂມງທ່ຽງ.
 ເຊັນອອກ ຫຼັງຈາກ 10:00 ໂມງເຊົ້າ.
 ເຊັນອອກ ບ່າຍ 1:00 ໂມງ.

2. Asking how many nights, days, weeks, etc. one wants to stay/ be there / live there.

ເຈົ້າຊົມກຢູ່ນີ້ **ຈັກຄືນ**?
 ທ່ານ ຈອນ ຊົມກ ຢູ່ໂຮງແຮມ ດອນຈັນ **ຈັກມື້**?
 ເຂົາເຈົ້າຊິເຮັດວຽກນີ້ ອີກ**ຈັກປີ**?
 ເຈົ້າຊິຮຽນພາສາລາວ ຢູ່ສະຖາບັນນີ້ **ຈັກເດືອນ**?
 ທ່ານ ນາງ ແຄຕຕິ ຊິໄປປະຈຳການ ຢູ່ເມືອງລາວ**ຈັກປີ**?
 ທ່ານ ອາຈານ ຊິສອນພາສາລາວ **ຈັກອາທິດ**?

3. Asking and giving directions inside the building.

3.1 Go upstairs/downstairs and then turn left/right.

ຖາມ: ຫ້ອງຂ້ອຍ**ຢູ່ໃສ**?
 ຕອບ: ຂຶ້ນຂັ້ນໄດໄປ ແລ້ວລ້ຽວຊ້າຍ.

ຖາມ: ຫ້ອງປະຊຸມ**ຢູ່ໃສ**?
 ຕອບ: ໄປຊື່ໆ ແລ້ວລ້ຽວຂວາ.

ຖາມ: ຫ້ອງອອກກຳລັງກາຍ**ຢູ່ໃສ**?
 ຕອບ: ຂຶ້ນຂັ້ນໄດໄປຊັ້ນທີສອງ ແລ້ວລ້ຽວຊ້າຍ.

ຖາມ: ຫ້ອງກິນລ້ຽງ**ຢູ່ໃສ**?
 ຕອບ: ລົງຂັ້ນໄດໄປຊັ້ນລຸ່ມ ແລ້ວໄປຊື່ໆ.

ຖາມ: ບາຣ໌**ຢູ່ໃສ**?
 ຕອບ: ຂຶ້ນຂັ້ນໄດໄປຊັ້ນສາມ ແລ້ວລ້ຽວຂວາ.

3.2 Pointing toward the directions.

ຖາມ: ເດີນເຮືອບິນ ຢູ່ໃສ?

ຕອບ: ຢູ່ທາງພາກເໜືອ ຂອງນະຄອນວຽງຈັນ.

ຖາມ: ເດີນກິລາແຫ່ງຊາດ ຢູ່ໃສ?

ຕອບ: ຢູ່ທາງທິດຕາເວັນອອກຂອງເມືອງນີ້.

ຖາມ: ສະລອຍນ້ຳຢູ່ໃສ?

ຕອບ: ຢູ່ຂ້າງກັບເດີນກິລາ ແລະ ໂຮງຮຽນນານາຊາດ.

ຖາມ: ເດີນເຕະບານຢູ່ໃສ?

ຕອບ: ຢູ່ໃກ້ ສະລອຍນ້ຳ.

ຖາມ: ຕະຫຼາດເຊົ້າຢູ່ໃສ?

ຕອບ: ຢູ່ຕໍ່ໜ້າ ສະຖານີຕໍາຫຼວດ.

DIALOGUE FOR LISTENING

Making a hotel reservation

| | |
|---|---|
| <p>ວັນດີ: ສະບາຍດີ! ທ່ານຕ້ອງການໃຫ້ຊ່ວຍຫຍັງບໍ?</p> | <p>Vandy: Hello! May I help you?</p> |
| <p>ເດວິດ: ສະບາຍດີ! ເຈົ້າມີຫ້ອງຫວັງບໍ? ຂ້ອຍຢາກຈອງຫ້ອງ ສຳລັບເອື້ອຍຂອງຂ້ອຍ.</p> | <p>David: Hello! Do you have vacancy? I'd like to reserve a room for my sister.</p> |
| <p>ວັນດີ: ມີ, ມີຫ້ອງຫວັງ. ທ່ານຕ້ອງການຈັກຫ້ອງ? ຈັກຄືນ ແລະ ເມື່ອໃດ?</p> | <p>Vanhdly: Yes, we have vacant rooms. How many rooms would you like, for how many nights and for when?</p> |
| <p>ເດວິດ: ຂ້ອຍຕ້ອງການຫ້ອງດຽວ ເທົ່ານັ້ນ ສຳລັບອາທິດໜ້າ.</p> | <p>David: I would like to reserve only one room for a week, for next week.</p> |
| <p>ວັນດີ: ຫ້ອງທຳມະດາ ຫຼືວ່າ ຫ້ອງພິເສດ?</p> | <p>Vanhdly: A regular or special room?</p> |
| <p>ເດວິດ: ລາຄາ ແຕກຕ່າງກັນແນວໃດ?</p> | <p>David: How are they different?</p> |
| <p>ວັນດີ: ຫ້ອງທຳມະດາ ລາຄາ 500.000 ກີບ ແລະ ຫ້ອງພິເສດ ລາຄາ 800.000 ກີບ.</p> | <p>Vanhdly: Regular room is 500,000 kips and the special one is 800,000 kips.</p> |
| <p>ເດວິດ: ມີ ລາຄາພິເສດ ສຳລັບພັກຫຼາຍຄືນບໍ?</p> | <p>David: Do you have special rate for a long stay?</p> |
| <p>ວັນດີ: ມີ ພວກເຮົາມີລາຄາພິເສດ. ລາຄາ 1 ອາທິດ ແມ່ນ 5.000.000 ກີບ ສຳລັບຫ້ອງພິເສດ. ທ່ານຈະເອົາບໍ? ແລ້ວ ເມື່ອໃດລະ?</p> | <p>Vanhdly: Yes, we do. The rate for a week is 5,000,000 kips for a special room. Would you like it, and for when?</p> |
| <p>ເດວິດ: ດີ! ຂ້ອຍຊື້ເອົາ ແລະ ເລີ່ມແຕ່ ວັນຈັນໜ້າ ຈົນໄປຮອດວັນອາທິດ.</p> | <p>David: Good! I'll take it, from next Monday through Sunday.</p> |
| <p>ວັນດີ: ຈະຈ່າຍຈັ່ງໃດ? ເງິນສົດ ຫຼື ບັດຄາເຣດິດ?</p> | <p>Vanhdly: How would you like to pay for this, cash or credit?</p> |
| <p>ເດວິດ: ເງິນສົດ ນີ້ເງິນ 5 ລ້ານກີບ.</p> | <p>David: Cash. Here is the cash for 5,000,000 kips.</p> |
| <p>ວັນດີ: ຂໍເບິ່ງໜັງສືຜ່ານແດນ ຂອງທ່ານແດ່?</p> | <p>Vanhdly: May I see your passport, please?</p> |
| <p>ເດວິດ: ນີ້ ໜັງສືຜ່ານແດນ. ຂອບໃຈເດີ...</p> | <p>David: Here's my passport. Thanks.</p> |
| <p>ວັນດີ: ບໍ່ເປັນຫຍັງ!</p> | <p>Vandy: You are welcome!</p> |

VOCABULARY

| | |
|------------|-------------------------------------|
| ຈະ, ຊິ | will, shall, future tense |
| ເອົາ | take possession of, get |
| ປະມານ | about, approximate, around |
| ຫ້ອງແອ | air conditioned room |
| ລວມທັງໝົດ | total, altogether |
| ເຊັ່ນອອກ | check out |
| ເຊັກອອກ | check out |
| ຈັກໂມງ? | What time? |
| ຂຶ້ນ | to go up, to ascend |
| ຂັ້ນໄດ | stairs, ladder, staircase, stairway |
| ຂັ້ນຂຶ້ນໄດ | take the step upstairs |
| ອັດຕາ | rate |
| ລາຄາ | price |
| ພັກຫຼາຍມື້ | long stay |
| ທຳມະດາ | regular, normal |
| ຫ້ອງການ | office |
| ສຳນັກງານ | office |
| ຂັ້ນໄດລົບ | elevator |
| ທາງອອກ | exit |
| ເອີ້ນຕັກຊີ | call a cab |
| ມື້ອື່ນ | tomorrow |
| ມື້ຮີ | the day after tomorrow |
| ມື້ວານນີ້ | yesterday |
| ຂັ້ນເທິງ | upper level |
| ຂັ້ນລຸ່ມ | lower level |

REVIEW

1. Discuss the content of the “*Dialogue for listening:*”

- ທ່ານ...ຕ້ອງການຫຍັງ?

- ເຮັດຫຍັງ?

- ເຂົາເຈົ້າຖາມຫຍັງ?

2. You want to know if there is a hotel in the neighborhood, so you ask:

3. You want to find out if there is a room available at a hotel and this is how you ask:

4. Find out the rate of a room with two beds for a week:

5. Tell a new Lao employee that his office is on the second floor, go upstairs and then turn left.

Tell him that his office is on the right, and the room number is 201.

ACTIVITY

1. Role-play:

- 1.1 Get a room at a hotel with a swimming pool.
- 1.2 Tell your friend about your hotel and how long you plan to stay there.
- 1.3 Call to make a hotel reservation for your family. Shop around first.

2. Map.

- Locate a hotel, embassy, university, shopping mall, bank, etc..
- Ask and give directions to a location found on the map.

3. Play a game, *Help! I'm lost* by asking and giving directions to:

- the men's restroom
- the ladies' restroom
- the instructor's office.
- the language training supervisor's office
- the US Embassy
- the airport
- a bank
- a Lao restaurant
- a bus station

🎧 ງານອະດີເຣກ ແລະ ເວລາຫວັ້າງ
(Hobbies and Leisure)

OBJECTIVES

Upon completion of this lesson, you will be able to:

- ✚ talk about someone's hobbies
- ✚ invite friends and guests to participate in activities
- ✚ recognize the names of major tourist cities and provinces in Laos
- ✚ use future tense / time correctly ຈະ ຊິ
- ✚ use the verb ມັກ “like” appropriately

COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGE: FRAME 1

| | |
|--|---|
| <p>ດາຣາ: ເຈົ້າຈະເຮັດຫຍັງ ທ້າຍອາທິດນີ້?</p> | <p>Dara: What are you doing this weekend?</p> |
| <p>ຈູດີ: ຂ້ອຍຊິໄປຫຼິ້ນເທນນິສ ກັບໝູ່ຂ້ອຍ. ແລ້ວເຈົ້າເດ ເຈົ້າຊິເຮັດຫຍັງ?</p> | <p>Judy: I am going to play tennis with my friends. And you, what are you doing?</p> |
| <p>ດາຣາ: ຂ້ອຍຊິໄປທ່ຽວຊົມທຳມະຊາດ ກັບສາມີຂ້ອຍ ຢູ່ວັງວຽງ? ຕອນກັບ ພວກເຮົາຊິແວ້ ຢ້ຽມຢາມ ພີ່ນ້ອງ ຢູ່ເມືອງ ໂພນໂຮງ.</p> | <p>Dara: I will go to Vangvieng for sightseeing with my husband. On our return, we will stop by our relatives in Phonhong District.</p> |
| <p>ຈູດີ: ໜ້າອິດສາ! ຢາກໄປນຳເດເທື່ອໜ້າ! ຕາມປົກກະຕິ ເຈົ້າເດ ມັກເຮັດຫຍັງ ໃນຍາມເຈົ້າມີເວລາຫວ່າງ?</p> | <p>Judy: I envy you! I'd like to go with you next time! Usually, what do you like to do when you have free time?</p> |
| <p>ດາຣາ: ເຈົ້າໄປນຳໄດ້ ເທື່ອໜ້າ! ຕາມປົກກະຕິ ແລ້ວ ຂ້ອຍມັກ ຮ້ອງເພງນຳຄາຣາໂອເກ ທຳຄວາມສະອາດເຮືອນ ຄົວກິນ ແລະ ໄປທຳບຸນ ຢູ່ວັດ. ເຈົ້າເດ ມັກເຮັດຫຍັງ ຍາມຫວ່າງ?</p> | <p>Dara: Yes, you can certainly come with us next time. Usually, I like singing along with karaoke, house cleaning, cooking and doing merit at the temple. What about you?</p> |
| <p>ຈູດີ: ຂ້ອຍມັກຫຼິ້ນກິລາ ພິເສດແມ່ນລອຍນ້ຳ ລົມໂທລະສັບກັບໝູ່ ສະສົມສະແຕມ ອ່ານປຶ້ມ ແຕ້ມຮູບ ແລະ ອ່ານບົດກອນ.</p> | <p>Judy: I like to play sports, especially swimming, talking on the phone with friends, collecting stamps, reading books, drawing and poems.</p> |
| <p>ດາຣາ: ດີຫຼາຍ. ນີ້ກໍໝາຍຄວາມວ່າ ເຈົ້າຍາກ ທີ່ຈະປ່ອຍເວລາໃຫ້ເສຍຖິ້ມເລີຍ..</p> | <p>Dara: Very good. This means that you hardly waste any time...</p> |
| <p>ຈູດີ: ແມ່ນແລ້ວ, ນັ້ນແມ່ນຄວາມຈິງ, ດາຣາ!</p> | <p>Judy: Yes, it is true, Dara!</p> |
| <p>ດາຣາ: ຂອບໃຈຫຼາຍໆເດີ, ຈູດີ!</p> | <p>Dara: Thank you very much, Judy!</p> |

VOCABULARY

| | |
|---------------|-------------------------|
| ໄປທ່ອງທ່ຽວ | travel, tour |
| ແຫຼ່ງທ້ອງທ່ຽວ | tourist attractions |
| ທິວທັດ | view |
| ທຳມະຊາດ | nature |
| ຊົນນະບົດ | countryside, rural area |
| ເຮັດບຸນ | do merit, make donation |
| ວັດ | Wat, temple |
| ພິທີສາດສະໜາ | religious ceremony |
| ແວ້ | stop by |
| ຢ້ຽມຢາມ | visit |
| ພີ່ນ້ອງ | relatives |
| ທຳຄວາມສະອາດ | cleaning |
| ເຮັດສວນ | gardening |
| ເມືອງວັງວຽງ | city of Vangvieng |
| ຮ້ອງເພງ | sing songs |
| ຍາມຫວັ້າງ | leisure time |
| ສະສົມ | to collect |
| ສະແຕມ | stamps |
| ຫຼິ້ນກີລາ | play sports |
| ບຄຳກອນ | poems |
| ແຕ້ມຮູບ | paint, draw a picture |
| ກິນລ້ຽງ | party |
| ອິດສາ | envy |
| ພິເສດ | special |

ມັກ + ຄຳກິລິຍາ....like + verb + object

| ສັບພະນາມ / ນາມ | ມັກ | ກິລິຍາ | ຫຍັງ ເວລາ |
|----------------|-----|--------|------------------------|
| ເຈົ້າ | ↓ | ເຮັດ | ຫຍັງ ໃນຍາມພັກການ? |
| ທ່ານ | ↓ | ກິນ | ອາຫານຫຍັງ ຍາມອາກາດໜາວ? |
| ທ່ານ ຈອນ | ↓ | ລົມ | ກັບໃຜ ຕອນມາຢາມສະຫະລັດ? |
| ເພິ່ນ | ↓ | ຄິດ | ຫຍັງ ຍາມຢູ່ຄົນດຽວ? |
| ເຂົາເຈົ້າ | ↓ | ໄປ | ໃສ ໃນທ້າຍອາທິດ? |

ມັກ + ນາມ....like + noun

| ສັບພະນາມ | ມັກ | ນາມ / ສຳນວນຖ້ອຍຄຳ |
|---------------|-----|--------------------------|
| ຂ້ອຍ | ↓ | ອາຫານເຜັດໆ. |
| ລາວ | ↓ | ໝາກໄມ້ສົດ. |
| ທ່ານ ນາງ ແມຣີ | ↓ | ການພະຈິນໄພ. |
| ສົມໃຈ | ↓ | ທຳມະຊາດທີ່ສວຍງາມ. |
| ເຂົາເຈົ້າ | ↓ | ຜິດລົມໂທລະສັບກັນເລື້ອຍໆ. |

RESPONSE DRILL

MODEL 1

ຄູ: ຂໍໂທດ, ອາທິດໜ້າ ທ່ານຈະໄປໃສ?

ນັກຮຽນ ກ: ອາທິດໜ້າ, ຂ້ອຍ ຈະໄປ ເມືອງ ໄມອາມີ.

ຄູ: ວັນເສົານີ້ ທ່ານຫຼຸດ ຊິເຮັດຫຍັງ?

ນັກຮຽນ ຂ: ວັນເສົານີ້ ເພິ່ນຊິໄປພັກຜ່ອນ ຢູ່ຊົນນະບົດ.

(Students are to take turns asking each other.)

| | | |
|-------------------------|-----|-----------|
| ຂໍໂທດ, ທ່ານ | ຊື່ | ໄປໃສ? |
| ↓ ພວກເຈົ້າ | ↓ | ↓ |
| ↓ ເພິ່ນ | ↓ | ↓ |
| ↓ ທ່ານ ຈອນ ແລະ ທ່ານ ຈິມ | ↓ | ເຮັດຫຍັງ? |
| ↓ ຂະເຈົ້າ | ↓ | ↓ |
| ↓ ມະນີດາ ແລະ ສິມພອນ | ↓ | ↓ |

| | | |
|----------------------------|------------|------------------------|
| ຂ້ອຍ | ຊື່ ໄປທ່ຽວ | ເມືອງ ຫຼວງພະບາງ. |
| ລາວ | ↓ | ເມືອງ ນິວຢອກຄ໌, |
| ທ່ານ ຈອນ | ↓ | ນະຄອນວຽງຈັນ. |
| ເຂົາເຈົ້າ | ↓ | ເມືອງ ປາກຊັນ. |
| ທ່ານ ສິມພອນ ແລະ ນາງ ມະນີດາ | ↓ | ປະເທດລາວ. |
| ທ່ານນາງ ແຄລລີ | ↓ | ຄອນພະເພງ ແຂວງຈໍາປາສັກ. |

MODEL 2

ຄູ: ທ່ານມັກເຮັດຫຍັງ ໃນເວລາພັກຜ່ອນ?

ນັກຮຽນ: ຂ້ອຍ ມັກນັ່ງຢູ່ຄົນດຽວ ແລ້ວພັ່ງເພງຮັກເກົ່າໆ.

ຄູ: ຖ້າເຈົ້າສາມາດບິນໄດ້ ເຈົ້າຈະບິນໄປໃສ?

ນັກຮຽນ: ຖ້າຂ້ອຍສາມາດບິນໄດ້ ຂ້ອຍຈະບິນໄປຍັງມຢາມບ້ານເກີດຂ້ອຍ.

(Students are to take turns asking each other.)

COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGE: FRAME 2

| | |
|--|--|
| ປຣານີ: ພັກຍາວທ້າຍອາທິດນີ້ ທ່ານຄິດວ່າຈະໄປທ່ຽວໃສ? | Prany: This long weekend, where are you going? |
| ທອມມີ: ຄິດວ່າ ຂ້ອຍຈະພາ ຄອບຄົວໄປທ່ຽວພາກເໜືອ. ລູກຊາຍນ້ອຍຂ້ອຍ ຢາກປີນພູ, ເຈົ້າຊ່ວຍແນະນຳຂ້ອຍໄດ້ບໍ່? ຂ້ອຍຄວນຈະໄປໃສດີ? | Tommy: I think I would like to take my family to the north. My young son wants to climb a mountain. What is your recommendation? Where should I go? |
| ປຣານີ: ເຈົ້າຄວນຈະໄປທ່ຽວຫຼວງພະບາງ ເພາະມີພູນ້ອຍ ຢູ່ໃຈກາງເມືອງ. | Prany: You should go to Luang Prabang. There is a hill located in the center of the city. |
| ທອມມີ: ຂອບໃຈ. ນັ້ນແມ່ນ ແນວຄິດທີ່ດີ! ເຈົ້າເດ ມີແຜນຈະເຮັດຫຍັງລະ? ເຈົ້າຈະໄປທ່ຽວໃສ? | Tommy: Thank you. That's a good idea! How about you, what is your plan? Where are you going? |
| ປຣານີ: ຂ້ອຍຈະບໍ່ໄປໃສ. ຂ້ອຍມີແຜນຈະພັກຜ່ອນ. | Prany: I am going nowhere. I plan to take a break. |
| ທອມມີ: ໂອ, ນັ້ນວິເສດທີ່ສຸດເລີຍ! | Tommy: Oh! That is excellent! |

Below is a list of some common Lao tourist sites:

ມໍລະດົກໂລກ

world heritage

ພະລາດຊະວັງເກົ່າ

former royal palace

ຖ້ຳ

caves

ນ້ຳຕົກ

water falls

ຄອນພະເພງ

Khonephapheng rapids

ວັດພູ

Wat Phou Champasak, an ancient temple

ຫຼີຜີ

Liphi, a Mekong rapids

| | |
|------------|------------------------------------|
| ທົ່ງໄຫຫີນ | Thonghaihin, Plain of Jars |
| ຖ້ຳຜູ້ນຳ | Thamphounam, leaders' caves |
| ວັດວາອາຮາມ | Buddhist temples |
| ວັດຊຽງຄວນ | Wat Xiengkhouane, a tourist temple |
| ທຳມະຊາດ | nature |

VOCABULARY

| | |
|-----------------|----------------------------------|
| ຢາກ | to want |
| ຄວນ | should |
| ແຜນ | plan, to plan |
| ພັກຍາວທ້າຍອາທິດ | long weekend |
| ພູ | hill, mountain |
| ຂຶ້ນພູ | climbing mountain |
| ໃຈກາງ | center, central |
| ແນະນຳ | to recommend |
| ແນວຄິດ | idea |
| ແທ້ຈິງ | real, true |
| ວິເສດ | marvelous, excellent, superb |
| ທີ່ສຸດ | the most, the best, theest |

ຢາກ + ຄຳກິລິຍາ....want + verb + subject

| | ຢາກ | ກິລິຍາ | |
|--------------|-----|---------|----------------|
| ຂ້ອຍ | ↓ | ໄປ | ຄອນພະເພງ. |
| ລາວ | ↓ | ກິນ | ໝາກໄມ້ສົດ. |
| ທ່ານ ຈອນ | ↓ | ພັກຜ່ອນ | ຈັກສອງ-ສາມວັນ. |
| ນາງ ມາລີ | ↓ | ຊື້ | ລົດຄັນໃໝ່. |
| ທ່ານນາງ ແມຣີ | ↓ | ຮຽນ | ພາສາຈີນກາງ. |

RESPONSE DRILL

MODEL 1

- ຄູ: ຍາມຫວ້າງ ທ່ານມັກເຮັດຫຍັງ?
 ນັກຮຽນ ກ: ຂ້ອຍຢາກໄປທ່ຽວຊົນນະບົດ ທີ່ສຸດເລີຍ.
 ນັກຮຽນ ຂ: ຂ້ອຍມັກແຕ້ມຮູບທີ່ສຸດເລີຍ.
 ນັກຮຽນ ຄ: ຂ້ອຍມັກໄປກິນເຂົ້າປ່າ.

(Students are to take turns asking each other.)

PROGRESSIVE RESPONSE DRILL

MODEL 2

- A: You like to go to Luang Prabang, don't you?
 B: Yes, I like to go to Luang Prabang.

Using the English above as a guide, students are to take turns asking and answering in Lao until everyone is fluent.

EXPANSION DRILL

| ແຂວງ | ບໍລິຄໍາໄຊ | Borikhamxay | Province |
|------|-------------|--------------|----------|
| ↓ | ຊຽງຂວາງ | Xiengkhouang | ↓ |
| ↓ | ໄຊຍະບູລີ | Xayabouly | ↓ |
| ↓ | ສາຣະວັນ | Saravan | ↓ |
| ↓ | ຫົວພັນ | Houaphan | ↓ |
| ↓ | ຈໍາປາສັກ | Champasak | ↓ |
| ↓ | ອຸດົມໄຊ | Oudomxay | ↓ |
| ↓ | ຄໍາມ່ວນ | Khammouane | ↓ |
| ↓ | ວຽງຈັນ | Vientiane | ↓ |
| ↓ | ສະຫວັນນະເຂດ | Savannakhet | ↓ |

MODEL 3

- ຄູ: ຂໍໂທດ ງານອະດີເຣກຂອງທ່ານ ແມ່ນຫຍັງ?
- ນັກຮຽນ ກ: ຂ້ອຍມັກ... (camping)
- ນັກຮຽນ ຂ: ຂ້ອຍ... (stamp collection)
- ນັກຮຽນ ຄ: ຂ້ອຍ.. (watching movies)

MODEL 4

- ຄູ: ຍາມພັກຜ່ອນ ທ່ານເຮັດຫຍັງ?
- ນັກຮຽນ ກ: ຊຸມແຊວກັບໝູ່ເພື່ອນ... (party)
- ນັກຮຽນ ຂ: ອ່ານໜັງສື... (reading)
- ນັກຮຽນ ຄ: ຂີ່ມ້າ... (riding a horse)

(Students are to practice asking and responding to each other.)

VOCABULARY

| | |
|-------------|--|
| ຂີ່ | to ride |
| ມ້າ | horse |
| ເບິ່ງ | to watch |
| ຮູບເຫງົາ | movie, cinema |
| ໂຮງຮູບເຫງົາ | Movies |
| ໂຮງລະຄອນ | theater |
| ນອນປ່າ | camping |
| ພູເບ້ຍ | Phubia, the highest mountain in Laos |
| ທ່າແຂກ | Thakhek |
| ສາມຫຼ່ຽມຄຳ | Golden Triangle (Myanmar, Laos and Thailand) |
| ແຂວງບໍ່ແກ້ວ | Bokeo Province |
| ສະຫວັນເວກັສ | Savan Vegas, a casino in Laos |
| ປາກຊ່ອງ | Pakxong |

MODEL 4

Teacher: What hobby does Sompchith like the most?

Student: Sompchith likes hunting the most.

ຄູ: ງານອະດີເຣກຫຍັງ ທ່ານສົມຈິດມັກທີ່ສຸດ?
(hunting)

ນັກຮຽນ ກ: ທ່ານສົມຈິດມັກການລ່າສັດ ທີ່ສຸດ.

ຄູ: ນາງ ມະນີດາມັກເຮັດຫຍັງໃນຍາມຫວ້າງ?
(sightseeing)

ນັກຮຽນ ຂ: ນາງມັກໄປທ່ຽງຊົມທິວທັດ.

ຄູ: ຈອນ ມັກເຮັດຫຍັງໃນຍາມຫວ້າງ? (reading)

ນັກຮຽນ ຄ: ລາວມັກອ່ານໃນຍາມຫວ້າງ.

ຄູ: ທ່ານທອມ ມັກເຮັດຫຍັງທີ່ສຸດຍາມຫວ້າງ? (stamp collection)

ນັກຮຽນ ງ: ເພິ່ນມັກສະສົມສະແຕມ ທີ່ສຸດ.

ຄູ: ລັດດາ ເຈົ້າມັກໄປໃສ່ທີ່ສຸດໃນຍາມຫວ້າງ? (hiking)

ນັກຮຽນ ຈ: ຂ້ອຍ ມັກໄປປີ້ນພູ ທີ່ສຸດ.

ຄູ: ແອນນາ ເຈົ້າມັກເຮັດຫຍັງທີ່ສຸດໃນຍາມພັກ? (picnic)

ນັກຮຽນ ງ: ຂ້ອຍ ມັກໄປກິນເຂົ້າປ່າ ທີ່ສຸດເລີຍ!

Students are to take turns asking each other what they like to do most.

COMMUNICATIVE EXCHANGE: FRAME 3

| | |
|--|---|
| ຈອນ: ງານອະດີເຣກ ຂອງທ່ານແມ່ນຫຍັງ? | John: What is your hobby? |
| ພອນ: ຂ້ອຍມັກຫຼິ້ນເຄື່ອງດົນຕີ. | Phone: I like to play /blow a Khene. |
| ຈອນ: ແຄນ ແມ່ນຫຍັງ? | John: What is a Khene? |
| ພອນ: ແຄນເປັນເຄື່ອງດົນຕີຊະນິດນຶ່ງຂອງລາວ. ມັນເປັນ ເຄື່ອງດົນຕີພື້ນເມືອງຂອງລາວ. ເຈົ້າເດ ແມ່ນຫຍັງ? | Phone: Khene is a Lao musical instrument. It is a traditional musical instrument. And how about you? |
| ຈອນ: ຂ້ອຍມັກແຕ້ມຮູບຫຼາຍ. | John: I like to paint very much. |
| ພອນ: ເຈົ້າມັກແຕ້ມຫຍັງລະ? | Phone: What do you like to paint? |
| ຈອນ: ຂ້ອຍມັກແຕ້ມຮູບຕົ້ນໄມ້ ແລະ ດອກໄມ້. ເມຍຂ້ອຍມັກຮູບແຕ້ມຂ້ອຍແທ້ໆ. | John: I like to paint trees and flowers. My wife really like them. |
| ພອນ: ດີຫຼາຍ. ເຈົ້າຄົງມັກແຕ້ມເກັ່ງນໍ! | Phone: Very good. You must be a good artist! |
| ຈອນ: ບໍ່ ບໍ່ເກັ່ງດອກ. ກໍພໍໄດ້! | John: Oh, no. Not really! |

VOCABULARY

| | |
|---------|---------------------------------|
| ແຄນ | Khene, a Lao musical instrument |
| ດົນຕີ | band |
| ຊະນິດ | kind, type |
| ຕົ້ນໄມ້ | tree |
| ດອກໄມ້ | flower |
| ເກັ່ງ | very well |
| ອີຫຼີ | really good, truly |
| ພໍໄດ້ | not really |

RESPONSE DRILL: Respond negatively

- ຄູ: ທ່ານ ມັກລອຍນ້ຳ ແມ່ນບໍ່?
 ນັກຮຽນ: ບໍ່ແມ່ນ ຂ້ອຍ ບໍ່ໄດ້ ມັກລອຍນ້ຳເລີຍ.
- ຄູ: ລາວມັກກິນອາຫານລົດເຜັດໆ ແມ່ນບໍ່?
 ນັກຮຽນ: ບໍ່ແມ່ນ ລາວ ບໍ່ໄດ້ ມັກອາເຜັດເລີຍ.
- ຄູ: ນາງ ແມຣີ ມັກລົດເກົາຫຼີ ແມ່ນບໍ່?
 ນັກຮຽນ: ບໍ່ແມ່ນ ນາງ ບໍ່ໄດ້ ມັກລົດເກົາຫຼີເລີຍ.
- ຄູ: ທ່ານ ເດວິດ ມັກໃຊ້ຄອມພິວເຕີ ແມ່ນບໍ່?
 ນັກຮຽນ: ບໍ່ແມ່ນ ເພິ່ນ ບໍ່ໄດ້ ມັກໃຊ້ຄອມພິວເຕີເລີຍ.
- ຄູ: ທ່ານນາງ ລີຊາມັກກິນອາຫານລາວ ແມ່ນບໍ່?
 ນັກຮຽນ: ບໍ່ແມ່ນ ທ່ານນາງ ລີຊາ ບໍ່ໄດ້ ມັກອາຫານລາວເລີຍ.

VOCABULARY

| | |
|--------------------|------------------------|
| ບໍ່ | no |
| ບໍ່ໄດ້ | have not |
| ເລີຍ / ຈັກໜ້ອຍເລີຍ | not at all |
| ລົດ / ລົດຊາດ | taste |
| ເຜັດ | spicy, hot |
| ໃຊ້ | use, utilize |
| ລົດເກົາຫຼີ | a Korean made car |
| ຄອມພິວເຕີ | computer |
| ທ່ານນາງ | Ms, Miss, Madame |
| ເພິ່ນ | he, she (with respect) |

DIALOGUE FOR LISTENING

| | |
|--|--|
| ດອນ: ຂໍໂທດ. ທ່ານຈະເຮັດຫຍັງທ້າຍອາທິດນີ້? | Don: Excuse me. What are you doing this weekend? |
| ມາລີ: ຂ້ອຍຄືຈະບໍ່ເຮັດຫຍັງ ທ້າຍອາທິດນີ້. ທ່ານເດ ມີແຜນຈະເຮັດຫຍັງ? | Mali: I will likely do nothing this weekend. Do you have any plans? |
| ດອນ: ຂ້ອຍ ຈະມີເພື່ອນມາຢາມ ແລ້ວພວກເຮົາຈະມີການຊຸມແຊວກັນ. ຂ້ອຍຢາກໃຫ້ທ່ານມາຮ່ວມພວກເຮົາ! | Don: I will have friends coming and then we will have a party. I would like you to join us. |
| ມາລີ: ເພື່ອນທ່ານຈະມາແຕ່ໃສ? ເຂົາເຈົ້າເປັນນັກການທູດ ຄືກັນບໍ່? | Mali: Where are your friends from? Are they diplomats too? |
| ດອນ: ເຂົາເຈົ້າຈະມາຈາກບາງກອກ. ແມ່ນແລ້ວ ເຂົາເຈົ້າກໍເປັນນັກການທູດຄືກັນ. | Don: They are from Bangkok. Yes, they are diplomats too. |
| ມາລີ: ໄດ້ ມີໃດລະ? ຂ້ອຍເອົາໝູ່ໄປນຳໄດ້ບໍ່? | Mali: OK, when is it? Could I bring a friend with me? |
| ດອນ: ມື້ວັນເສົາ. ຍິນດີຕ້ອນຮັບສຳລັບໝູ່ທ່ານ. | Don: Saturday. Please, you are welcome to bring your friend. |
| ມາລີ: ຂອບໃຈທ່ານຫຼາຍໆ. ໃຫ້ຂ້ອຍເອົາອາຫານໄປບໍ່? | Mali: Thank you very much. May I bring some food? |
| ດອນ: ບໍ່ຈຳເປັນເລີຍ! ແຕ່ວ່າ ຖ້າທ່ານ ຢາກດີມ ແລະ ກິນຫຍັງພິເສດ, ກະລຸນາ ເຊີນຕາມສະບາຍ. | Don: There is no need. But if you want to bring something special, please do. |
| ມາລີ: ດີ ຂ້ອຍຈະເອົາໝາກໄມ້ ໃນສວນຫຼັງບ້ານ ແລະ ເຫຼົ້າສາໂທໄປສົມທົບ. ແລ້ວຈັກໂມງ? | Mali: Good. I will bring fruits from my backyard and Lao wine. What time? |
| ດອນ: ດີຫຼາຍ. ປະມານ ເຈັດໂມງແລງ. | Don: Very good. It will be around 7:00 pm. |
| ມາລີ: ໂອເຄ. ພົບກັນ ວັນເສົາ ເຈັດໂມງແລງ, ໂມງອະເມລິກັນ. | Mali: OK. See you on Saturday, 7:00 pm, American time. |

VOCABULARY

| | |
|------------------|------------------------------------|
| ຄື | likely |
| ເຊີນ | to invite |
| ຊວນ | to invite (informal) |
| ເຂົ້າຮ່ວມ/ມາຮ່ວມ | to participate |
| ຍິນດີຕ້ອນຮັບ | welcome |
| ເຕັ້ນລຳ | to dance |
| ລຳວົງ | lamvong, a popular Lao dance |
| ສວນຫຼັງບ້ານ | backyard |
| ເອົາມາ | to bring |
| ໝາກໄມ້ | fruits |
| ເຫຼົ້າສາໂທ | lao satho, wine made of sweet rice |
| ສົມທົບ | together |
| ແຄມທະເລ / ຫາດຊາຍ | beach |

LESSON QUIZ

A. Select from the given Lao words to fill in the blanks.

| | | | | | |
|-----|-----|------|-------|--------|---------|
| ຢາກ | ມັກ | ເລີຍ | ມາຈາກ | ບໍ່ໄດ້ | ບໍ່ແມ່ນ |
|-----|-----|------|-------|--------|---------|

- ຂ້ອຍ _____ ອາຫານອະເມລິກັນ.
- ລາວ _____ ລັດໃດ?
- ທ່ານ _____ ເຮັດຫຍັງ ທ້າຍອາທິດນີ້?
- ທ່ານ _____ ໄປໃສເລີຍ.
- ຂ້ອຍ _____ ນັກການທູດ.

B. Select five hobbies you like most.

- ທຸ່ງວຊົມຊົນນະບົດ _____
- ທຸ່ງວເມືອງມໍລະດົກໂລກ _____
- ສະສົມສະແຕມ _____
- ກິນເຂົ້າປ່າ _____
- ອ່ານປຶ້ມ _____
- ເບິ່ງຮູບເຫງົາ _____
- ໄປແຄມທະເລ _____
- ລົມໂທລະສັບກັບເພື່ອນ _____

C. Write the name of four cities in Laos.

D. Translate the following sentences.

1. What is your favorite hobby? _____
2. Do you like reading? _____
3. Does she like to dance? _____
4. Yes, she does. _____
5. No, she does not like to dance at all. _____



<http://www.i-travel.bg/052/images/EXC/laos.jpg>